

University of New Mexico

UNM Digital Repository

Anthropology ETDs

Electronic Theses and Dissertations

5-16-1956

A Revision of the Distribution of Armor in Native North America

Norman D. Thomas

Follow this and additional works at: https://digitalrepository.unm.edu/anth_etds



Part of the [Anthropology Commons](#)

Recommended Citation

Thomas, Norman D.. "A Revision of the Distribution of Armor in Native North America." (1956).
https://digitalrepository.unm.edu/anth_etds/139

This Thesis is brought to you for free and open access by the Electronic Theses and Dissertations at UNM Digital Repository. It has been accepted for inclusion in Anthropology ETDs by an authorized administrator of UNM Digital Repository. For more information, please contact disc@unm.edu.

ARMOR IN
NATIVE NORTH
AMERICA

THOMAS

378.789

Un3 Oth

1956

cop. 2

THE LIBRARY
UNIVERSITY OF NEW MEXICO



Call No.
378.789
Un30th
1956
cop.2

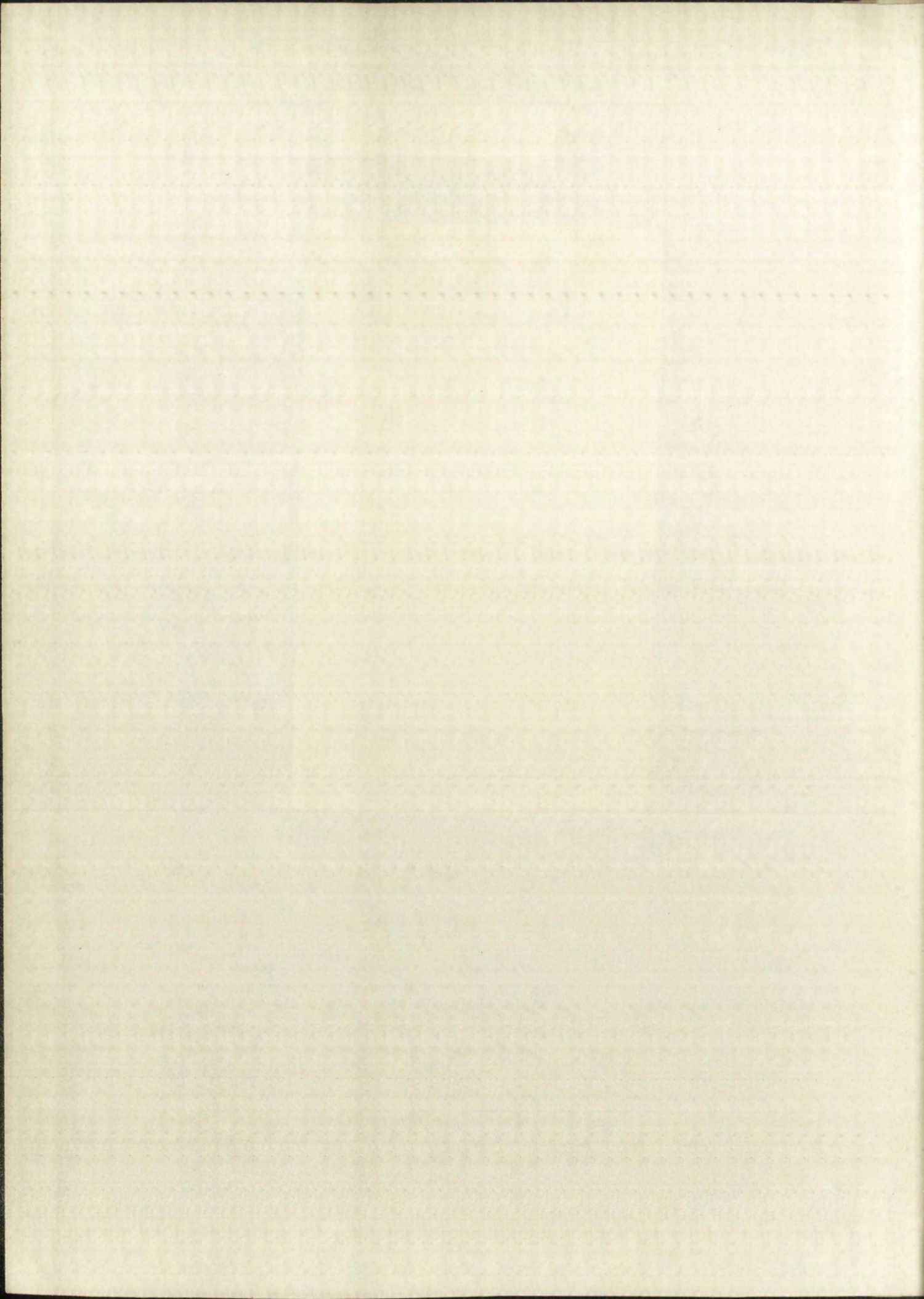
Accession
Number
215762

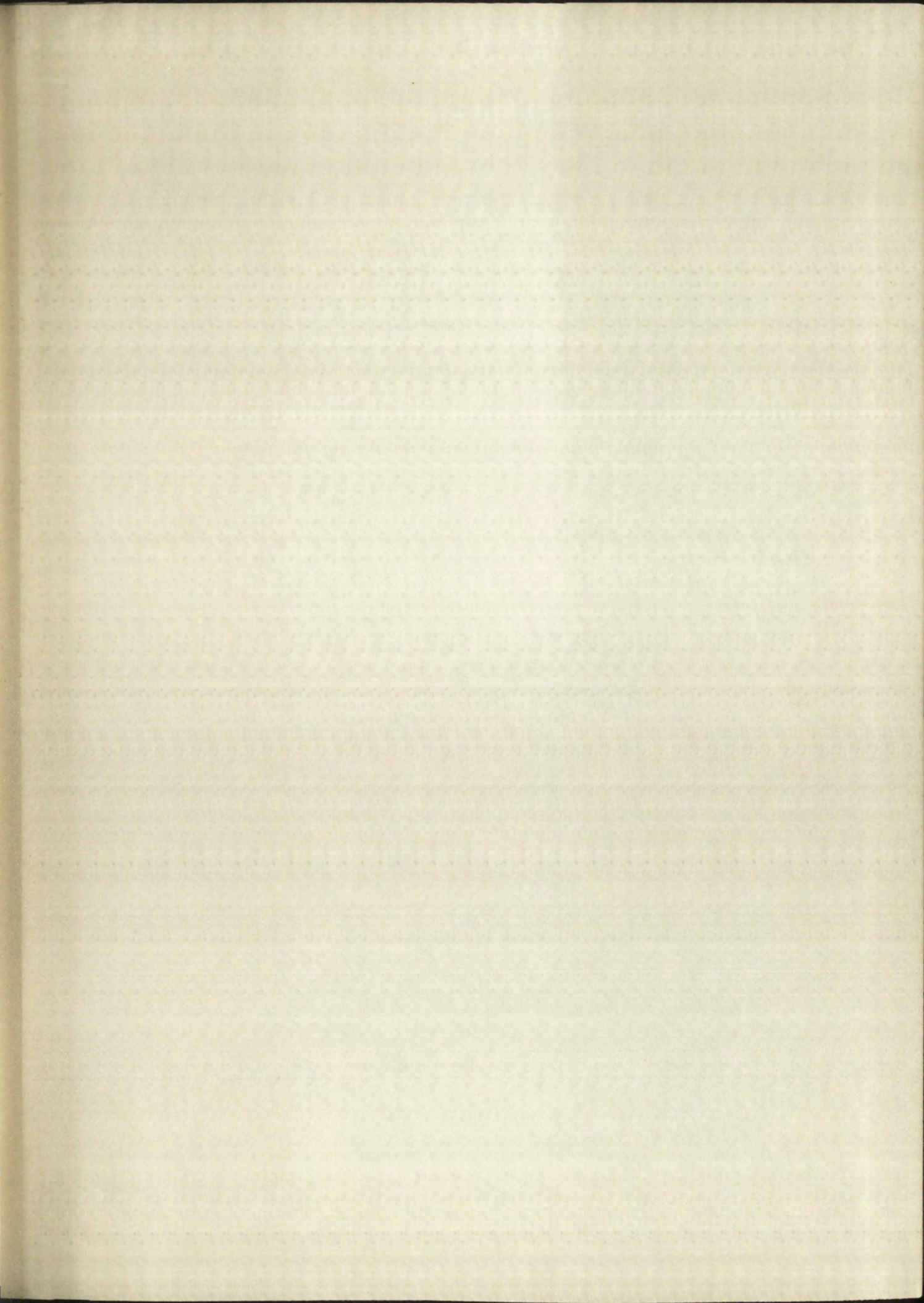
A14413 967662

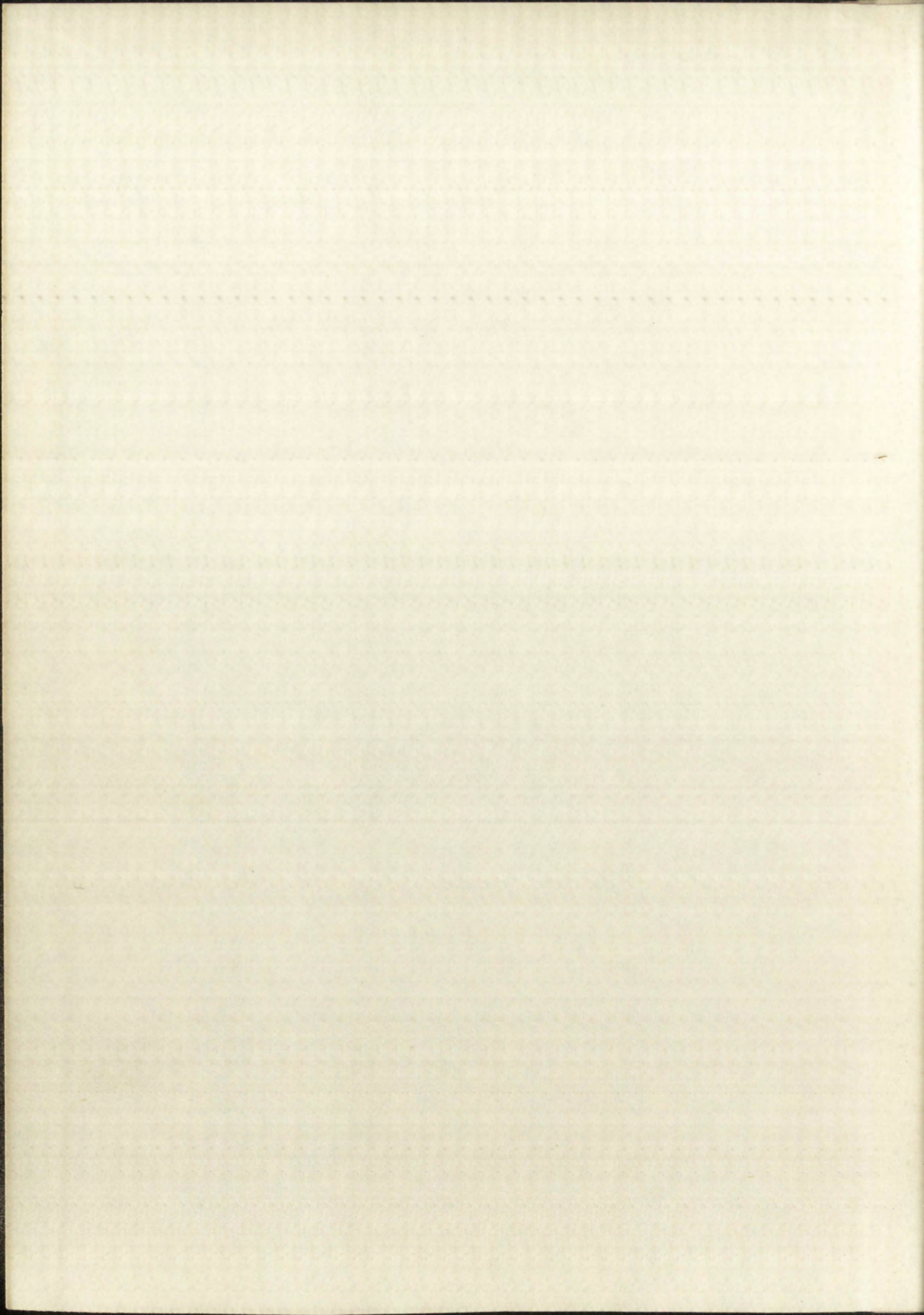
DATE DUE			
DEC 19 '73 UNM 21			
REC'D UNM DEC 21 '73 MAY 24 '82			
AUG 23 '82			
UBY 10/10 4754277			
DEC 12 1984			
FEB - 1 1985			
GAYLORD			PRINTED IN U.S.A.

GAYLORD

PRINTED IN U.S.A.







WILLIAM HARRIS
FEBRUARY
COTTON CONTENT

WILLIAMS BROS

ERASE

COTTON CONTENT

UNIVERSITY OF NEW MEXICO LIBRARY

MANUSCRIPT THESES

Unpublished theses submitted for the Master's and Doctor's degrees and deposited in the University of New Mexico Library are open for inspection, but are to be used only with due regard to the rights of the authors. Bibliographical references may be noted, but passages may be copied only with the permission of the authors, and proper credit must be given in subsequent written or published work. Extensive copying or publication of the thesis in whole or in part requires also the consent of the Dean of the Graduate School of the University of New Mexico.

This thesis by ...Norman D. Thomas.....
has been used by the following persons, whose signatures attest their acceptance of the above restrictions.

A Library which borrows this thesis for use by its patrons is expected to secure the signature of each user.

NAME AND ADDRESS

DATE

A REVISION OF THE DISTRIBUTION OF ARMOR
IN NATIVE NORTH AMERICA

By
Norman D. Thomas

A Thesis
Submitted in Partial Fulfillment of the
Requirements for the Degree of
Master of Arts in Anthropology

The University of New Mexico

1956



This thesis, directed and approved by the candidate's committee, has been accepted by the Graduate Committee of the University of New Mexico in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of

MASTER OF ARTS

E. J. Castetter
DEAN

5/16/1956
DATE

A Revision of the Distribution
of Armor in Native North America

by

Norman D. Thomas

Thesis committee

Leona Fier
CHAIRMAN

W. W. Hill

Flora E. Ellis

This thesis, directed and supervised by the candidate's committee, has been accepted by the Faculty Committee of the University of New Mexico in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of

[Signature]

5/10/52

DATE

Thesis Committee

CHAIRMAN

[Signature]

[Signature]

[Signature]

378.789
Un 30th
1956
cop. 2

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. INTRODUCTION	1
The Problem and Purpose of this Study	1
Previous Work Done on North American Armor	4
Sources, Procedure, and Treatment of Findings	9
II. PLATE ARMOR IN NORTH AMERICA	13
III. THE ARMOR ASSOCIATION OF WESTERN NORTH AMERICA	24
Rod and Slat Armor in Western North America	25
Hide Armor in North America	60
Hide Tunic and Jacket Armor	60
Belt Armor	77
Curtain Shields	77
Helmets and Visors	84
Local Armors of Minimum Occurrence	89
The Problem of Asiatic Affinities	91
IV. ROD ARMOR IN EASTERN NORTH AMERICA	96
V. ROD SHIELDS IN NORTH AMERICA	109
VI. SUMMARY AND CONCLUSION	119
BIBLIOGRAPHY	123
APPENDIX A	142
APPENDIX B	144
APPENDIX C	165

378.789
Jan 30 1926
cop 2

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER

I. INTRODUCTION

The Problem and Purpose of This Study
Previous Work Done on North American
Sources, Procedures, and Terminology

II.

PLATE ARMOR IN NORTH AMERICA

III.

THE ARMOR ASSOCIATION OF NORTH AMERICA

Head and Steel Armor in North America
Helmets and Visors

Body Armor in North America

Plate Armor in North America

Chainmail

Helmets and Visors

Local Armors of North America

The Problem of North American

IV.

ROD ARMOR IN EASTERN NORTH AMERICA

V.

ROD SHIELDS IN NORTH AMERICA

VI.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSION

BIBLIOGRAPHY

APPENDIX A

APPENDIX B

APPENDIX C

	PAGE
APPENDIX D	170
APPENDIX E	173
APPENDIX F	196
APPENDIX G	198
APPENDIX H	200
APPENDIX I	205
APPENDIX J	213
APPENDIX K	215

100
U.S.
100

APPENDIX E	100
APPENDIX F	101
APPENDIX G	102
APPENDIX H	103
APPENDIX I	104
APPENDIX J	105
APPENDIX K	106

100
U.S.
100

LIST OF FIGURES

FIGURE	PAGE
1. Distribution of Plate, Rod, and Slat Armor in North America	15
2. Examples of Plate, Rod, and Slat Armors	16
3. Distribution of Tunic and Jacket Hide Armor in North America	63
4. Examples of Hide Armors, Helmet and Visor, and Eastern Rod Armor	64
5. Distribution of Belt Armor in North America	79
6. Distribution of the Curtain Shield in North America	81
7. Distribution of Helmets in North America	87
8. Distribution of Rod Shields in North America	111

FIGURE

1. Distribution of ... North America
2. Examples of ...
3. Distribution of ... North America
4. Examples of ...
5. Distribution of ...
6. Distribution of ...
7. Distribution of ...
8. Distribution of ...

100-101-102-103-104-105-106-107-108-109-110-111-112-113-114-115-116-117-118-119-120-121-122-123-124-125-126-127-128-129-130-131-132-133-134-135-136-137-138-139-140-141-142-143-144-145-146-147-148-149-150-151-152-153-154-155-156-157-158-159-160-161-162-163-164-165-166-167-168-169-170-171-172-173-174-175-176-177-178-179-180-181-182-183-184-185-186-187-188-189-190-191-192-193-194-195-196-197-198-199-200

LIST OF TABLES

TABLE	PAGE
I. Key to Figure 1: Distribution of Plate, Rod, and Slat Armor in North America	14
II. Occurrence of Armor for the Arms and Legs and Kilt Armor in North America	59
III. Key to Figure 3: Distribution of Tunic and Jacket Hide Armor in North America	61
IV. Distribution of the Use of an Adhesive with Sand or Gravel to Fortify Armor in North America .	72
V. Key to Figure 5: Distribution of Wide Belt Armor in North America	78
VI. Key to Figure 6: Distribution of the Curtain Shield in North America	80
VII. Key to Figure 7: Distribution of Helmets and Visors in North America	85
VIII. Local Armors in North America Not of the Standard Rod or Hide Construction	90
IX. Key to Figure 8: Distribution of Rod Shields in North America	110

TABLA

I. Key to the ...

II. Organization of the ...

III. Key to the ...

IV. Distribution of the ...

V. Key to the ...

VI. Key to the ...

VII. Key to the ...

VIII. Local names of the ...

IX. Key to the ...

I. INTRODUCTION

The Problem and Purpose of this Study.

Historical and anthropological literature has clearly indicated the use of body armor in warfare by the native inhabitants of North America. However, few scholars have dealt with this subject, and only one distribution of armor, of limited scope, has been published.¹ Several contrasting types of armor have been distinguished for North America, yet there has been no published attempt to scrutinize a majority of the sources now available in order to obtain a total picture of the native armor distribution and the relationships the armor types bear to one another. It is the purpose of this study to attempt such a distribution and to illuminate the relationships among various types of armor, in order to advance argument in the defense of the proposition that there existed in North America at least three separate areas of armor usage, none of which were historically or geographically related in any direct manner.

There is a sizable vocabulary for the armor traditions of both Europe and the Far East which nominally distinguishes the various types and parts of the complex armor of those areas. North America has not yielded to us any formalized

¹Spier, Havasupai Ethnography, 1928, pp. 257-58.

The Problem and Purpose of the Study
Historical and Geographical

indicated the use of such terms as "inhabitant of North America" and "Geat with this subject" and "of limited scope, but it is not a type of area have been used yet there has been no attempt to majority of the countries of the total picture of the world's relationships the study is for the purpose of this study is to illustrate the relationships in order to advance the study of the world's relationships with that there is a separate area of study which is by or geographically. There is a study of both Europe and the various types of areas. North America is a study of

armor vocabulary from native sources, and yet its armor was sufficiently distinctive to render the application of Old World terminologies unwise. Since the pertinent excerpts from the literature are composed primarily of descriptive statements, it is upon these that the armor of this continent must be typologically distinguished. In this paper only the most obvious and more easily distinguished categories of North American armor are described, all of which have been recognized by previous authors. These armor categories are plate armor, slat armor, rod armor, hide armor of both tunic and short jacket types, and curtain shields. Minimal definitions will suffice until these armor subjects are handled in more detail later in this study.

Plate armor was identified by construction from rectangular plates of some hard material such as bone, flat in cross-section, with multiple perforations for lacing them parallel, and imbricated into bands which were then arranged in tiers in a jacket or tunic type of armor. Slat armor also consisted of rectangular pieces of some hard material, usually wood, flat in cross-section, and were also arranged in parallel fashion in jackets; but the slats were not imbricated and were used in only one major band for the trunk of the body and were therefore considerably longer than the plates in plate armor. Furthermore, these slats were generally not perforated for attachment but were connected to each

COLEOPTERA

INVENT

Among the most common of the Coleoptera is the

Scarabaeidae, which is found in all parts of the

World. The most common of these is the

Scarabaeus, which is found in all parts of the

World. The most common of these is the

Scarabaeus, which is found in all parts of the

World. The most common of these is the

Scarabaeus, which is found in all parts of the

World. The most common of these is the

Scarabaeus, which is found in all parts of the

World. The most common of these is the

Scarabaeus, which is found in all parts of the

World. The most common of these is the

Scarabaeus, which is found in all parts of the

World. The most common of these is the

Scarabaeus, which is found in all parts of the

World. The most common of these is the

Scarabaeus, which is found in all parts of the

World. The most common of these is the

Scarabaeus, which is found in all parts of the

World. The most common of these is the

Scarabaeus, which is found in all parts of the

World. The most common of these is the

Scarabaeus, which is found in all parts of the

World. The most common of these is the

Scarabaeus, which is found in all parts of the

other instead by an over and under weaving technique, utilizing some type of cordage. Rod armor was similar to slat armor except that the vertical strips were round in cross-section. Hide armor referred to any type of hide protection for the trunk of the body which involved close contact envelopment of the body. Curtain shield denoted a flexible sheeting, usually of hide, which was suspended in front of the body by hand or attached by a thong at the neck only, in which case it could be manipulated by one hand. The curtain shield was not primarily intended to envelope the body. Further elaboration on the character of these armors will evolve as they are discussed in the text.

The format of the text to come will consist first of a brief presentation of the present status of the problem by critically reviewing the work of previous investigators on this subject. Following this will appear a statement concerning the sources of data for this particular study, method of procedure, and treatment of the findings. The main text will consider Alaskan plate armor, slat, rod, and hide armor in western North America, and eastern rod armor in that order. Distribution tables, some supplemented by maps, will be presented for plate, rod, and slat armors; hide tunic and jacket armors; belt armor; the curtain shield; local armor not of rod or hide construction; helmets and visors; arm, leg, and kilt armor; and the use of an adhesive with sand

and gravel to fortify armor. A summary chapter will briefly review the conclusions of the previous chapters in defense of the proposition that North America possessed essentially three separate areas of armor usage. An appendix will present a tabulation of the data from which the distribution tables were constructed.

Previous Work Done on North American Armor.

The vast majority of material on native North American armor consisted of short descriptive statements for individual groups and localized areas. There have been no papers which were intended to deal intensively with armor distributions in this area and only one paper which was specifically an attempt at the description of a variety of North American armor.

This latter paper was Hough's Primitive American Armor published in 1895.² Hough identified and described six types of body armor for North America. These types he called plate, slat, rod, band, skin, and cotton-padded armor, none of which varied essentially from types identified in the present paper. Although Hough described these in some detail under the geographical headings of Bering Strait area, Western area, and Eastern area, his work was not intensive

²Hough, Primitive American Armor, 1895.

enough to be called a distributional study. Much of his data came from available museum specimens and early travel accounts; he appeared to have been unconcerned generally with filling in regional gaps in occurrence.

Hough's conclusions are interesting in that he decided that the majority of armor-using tribes in America were sedentary tribes. The use of armor, he believed, implied a differentiation of weapons which made armor necessary and was initiated through diffusion or independent invention. Though he felt hide armor was likely to have arisen independently in both the Old and the New Worlds, he was certain that American plate armor had diffused from Asia, very likely Japan, and passed into Northwest Coast slat armor which possibly developed from the plate idea.

The only published distribution of the principle native North American armors was presented in 1928 by Spier in his Havasupai Ethnography.³ He identified and gave distributions for hide tunic type armor, rod and slat armor, and the curtain shield. Since his chief purpose was to illustrate the wider occurrence in Western North America of traits possessed by the Havasupai, he did not feel the need for pursuing the armor distributions intensively or to their ultimate limits. Although the present study attempted to be

³Spier, loc. cit.

more intensive, it was not able to extend appreciably the outer limits of Spier's distributions. It is pertinent to note that he classed slat and rod armor together for a single distribution.

The problem of plate armor in the New World was discussed by Collins in 1937.⁴ As well as a critical review of the literature on this subject, he indicated that New World plate armor was limited to the Bering Straits area only and was very definitely of the same continuum as the immediately contiguous Asiatic plate armor. His own work at St. Lawrence Island suggested its first appearance there in the relatively recent Punuk period of shortly pre-contact age. Furthermore, Collins recognized a geographical discontinuity between the Arctic plate armor and the Northwest Coast slat armor, as well as a fundamental difference in the construction of the two. The present study does not refute these conclusions or substantially alter Collins' New World plate armor distribution.

The only survey of armor occurrences for the eastern North America area was that presented by Flannery in 1939 in her Analysis of Coastal Algonquian Culture.⁵ She gave a

⁴Collins, Archeology of St. Lawrence Island . . . , 1937, pp. 325-330.

⁵Flannery, . . . Coastal Algonquian Culture, 1939, pp. 75-76.

more intensive, it was found that the
outer limits of the distribution
note that the distribution is not
single distribution.

The problem of the distribution of the
caused by the distribution of the
of the distribution of the
World plate error distribution
only and was very
immediately consistent
as St. Lawrence Island
in the relatively
age. Furthermore,
continuity between the
Gout also known, as well as
consistency of the
these conditions
plate error distribution.

The only survey of the
North American area
in the Arctic area of the

simple listing of published sources for armor among the Northeastern Algonquian and Iroquoian groups and stated that rod armor may have existed in that area due to Iroquoian influence.

Plate armor was the only armor considered in this study which has been dealt with previously in length for the Old World. Two studies in particular presented detailed consideration of the problem. The first of these appeared in Laufer's Prolegomena on the History of Defensive Armor which was Part I of his Chinese Clay Figures.⁶ He thoroughly discussed the historical and distributional aspects of plate armor for the whole Asiatic area, basing his work primarily on extensive collections of Chinese clay statuettes and liberal use of original Chinese texts.⁷ Laufer found untenable Hough's thesis that Japan was the stimulating source for the North American plate armor tradition. This he based upon an early Chinese account of a tribute of bone armor being presented to China in A.D. 262 by the Su-shen, a group living on the mainland to the northeast of Korea. The group was well recorded by both Chinese and Japanese chroniclers. Observing that such armor seemed to appear first in Japan no earlier than the close of the Eighth Century and that it

⁶Laufer, Chinese Clay Figures, 1914, pp. 73-315.

⁷Ibid., pp. 258-291.

did not probably yet occur in China at the time of the tribute, he concluded that bone plate armor in Northeast Asia was as old as, or older than, plate armor in China, Korea, or Japan. Citing the occurrence of plate armor in Western Asia in the first millenium B.C., Laufer suggested there was no need to resort to China or Japan for plate armor origins.

The second report on Old World plate armor referred to was Thordeman's paper, The Asiatic Splint Armour in Europe, published in 1933.⁸ The splint armor with which he was concerned was plate armor as defined in the present paper. Thordeman's purpose was to trace the center of distribution of the phenomenon in relation to Europe, particularly Sweden where it appeared in late archaeological sites. In doing so he presented a generalized distribution extending from Europe and western Asia eastward to the Pacific Ocean. It was found that plate armor represented such a stability of method of manufacture that a series of plates from one end of its distribution to the other showed a remarkable uniformity in shape and the placement of the perforations. So stereotyped in style were the plates that identification of isolated units as armor plate was made quite accurately.

Regarding the affiliations of plate armor, Thordeman called attention to scale armor, constructed of overlapping

⁸Thordeman, The Asiatic Splint Armour in Europe, 1933.

did not probably ...
...
... was an ...
... on Japan ...
... Asia in the ...
... no need to ...
... The second ...
... to was ...
... published in ...
... earned was ...
... Thorndike's ...
... of the ...
... where it ...
... he presented ...
... Europe and ...
... was found ...
... method of ...
... of its ...
... ity in ...
... stereotyped ...
... isolated ...
... regarding ...
... called ...

leather or metal scales or plates which were attached directly to a backing of some sort, such as a leather coat. This scale armor Laufer had indicated to be of older use in China and Japan than plate armor. The scales were usually triangular or rectangular with one rounded end. A number of occurrences of such armor were pointed out by Thordeman in which the scales were perforated much the same as for plate armor but were stapled through the perforations to the backing material. There were even examples where the scales were used as plates, and were laced together without benefit of a backing material. These forms he thought to be transitional to plate armor. Influenced by the fact that plate armor seemed oldest in western Asia, Thordeman's data led him to conclude that it was the nomadic people of central Asia that served as the distributing focus of plate armor to Europe, China, and Siberia.

Sources, Procedure, and Treatment of Findings.

By far the majority of citations for armor occurrences in North America are restricted to very short statements pertinent to a particular group, and are usually not more than a sentence or two long. Modern ethnographies and early travel and historical literature constitute the majority of sources used for this paper. Modern ethnographic sources offered the bulk of the material for western North America

and even substantiated the few citations from early travel literature which were found. For distributions east of the Rocky Mountains, early travel sources were almost wholly relied upon.

Whenever possible the original, or primary, sources were used. In a few instances secondary sources were used to fill out the distributions where material was lacking, or to substantiate a questionable citation for the same group. In any case, armor ascriptions suspected of being weak are clearly indicated.

The distributions as herein presented have a decided weakness in that they represent a wide geographical coverage with no stable temporal coverage. The periods of time represented by the different citations ranged from the Sixteenth Century to the late Nineteenth Century, a span of more than three hundred years. However, the weakness is not quite so serious as it at first appears. For western North America the few early historical records of armor were almost always substantiated by ethnographic work with late informants, and for most groups in that area this latter type of information was all that was available. Since the informants' information almost always referred to a period in their early life or the life of their fathers, the western distributions represent generally the first three quarters of the Nineteenth Century. The eastern North America material, however, almost

and even today, the people of the
Rocky Mountain region are
relied upon.

However, the people of the
Rocky Mountain region are
relied upon. In any case, the
Rocky Mountain region is
relied upon.

The Rocky Mountain region is
relied upon. The Rocky Mountain
region is relied upon. The
Rocky Mountain region is
relied upon.

The Rocky Mountain region is
relied upon. The Rocky Mountain
region is relied upon. The
Rocky Mountain region is
relied upon.

The Rocky Mountain region is
relied upon. The Rocky Mountain
region is relied upon. The
Rocky Mountain region is
relied upon.

wholly represents the Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries. Thus it is apparent that the greatest chronological discrepancies in the distributions are on a longitudinal basis between eastern and western North America. It will be seen later that there was a typological split in the armor traditions along this same geographical axis.

A further time leveling factor within the two areas was the rapid disappearance of aboriginal armor upon European contact, due to the introduction of firearms and iron arrow points. It does not seem likely that the native North American armor distributions shifted their perimeters once European contact was established. It is reasonable to assume that its disappearance even preceded contact when the gun frontier advanced ahead of the actual European front. Because of this it is certain that in some areas, particularly eastern North America, the distributions offered here are attenuated presentations of the true precontact-pregun situation.

The procedure for outlining the armor limits was one of a very general and spotty coverage of the whole of North America with a first result of many gaps and poor continuity. These gaps were then attacked more intensively to see what continuity could be provided, if any at all. Finally, it remained to test the outer limits of the distributions to see if they were valid. This was done by making use of the

many negative statements for armor that had accumulated through the collection of data. If these negative statements of occurrence were not refuted by positive statements, and, if they fell outside the theretofore armor limits, a further check was made of the intervening groups.

100

many negative statements, it is not clear that the

through the police, and it is not clear that the

of occurrence were not, and it is not clear that the

if they tell outside, it is not clear that the

chose was made of the investigation, and it is not clear that the

II. PLATE ARMOR IN NORTH AMERICA¹

Probably the most striking characteristic of the plate armor distribution in the New World was that nowhere did it appear to contact the distribution of any other type of New World armor. It was limited entirely to the immediate environs of Bering Straits, and there was no indication that it was used in modern times on the American side by any people other than the Western Eskimo. Since this New World plate armor distribution showed absolute continuity with plate armor in Siberia, it took on the appearance of representing the most eastern periphery of a distribution which had its center in the Old World.

No information relative to armor of any type was found for interior Alaska or the Bering Sea coast south of Norton Sound. The nearest armor occurrence to the south of plate armor was the rod armor of the Aleut and the rod and slat armor of the Cook Inlet Tanaina. Quimby stated that the Aleut had plate armor as well as rod and slat armor;² however, as the work in which the statement appeared was of a summary nature with no sources given, and since a substantial quantity

¹See the plate armor distribution in Table I, p. 14, and Figure 1, p. 15. See Figure 2a, p. 16, for illustration.

²Quimby, Aleutian Islanders . . ., 1944, p. 16.

KEY TO FIGURE 1:
DISTRIBUTION OF PLATE, ROD, AND SLAT ARMOR IN NORTH AMERICA^a

Plate Armor

1. St. Lawrence Island
2. Diomed Island (Little?)
3. Cape Prince of Wales
4. Kotzebue Sound

Rod Armor

1. Aleut
2. Koniag (?)
3. Tanaina: Upper Inlet, Tyonek and Kenai areas
4. Tlingit
5. Tlingit: Chilkat
6. Tlingit: Sitka
7. Tlingit: Taku
8. Haida: Kaigani (?)
9. Haida: Massett
10. Tsimshian proper
11. Kwakiutl: Haihais
12. Bella Coola
13. Nootka
14. Tahltan
15. Slave: Lower Liard R.
16. Sekani
17. Western Dene
18. Carrier; Babine
19. Chilcotin
20. Shuswap
21. Lillooet
22. Thompson
23. Okanagan
24. Sanpoil
25. Kalispel
26. Coeur d'Alene
27. Flathead
28. Kutenai
29. Western Washington; Northwestern Oregon (?)
30. Western Oregon; Northern California (?)

31. Chinook
32. Tolowa
33. Takelma
34. Karok
35. Yurok
36. Wiyot
37. Hupa
38. Chilula
39. Modoc
40. Shasta
41. Achomawi
42. Atsugewi
43. Maidu
44. Wintu
45. Wintun
46. Patwin: Hill
47. Pomo
48. Algonquin
49. Huron
50. Iroquois
51. Delaware (?)
52. Roanoke
53. Lower Savannah R. (?)
54. Mosquito (?)

Slat Armor

1. Tanaina: Middle Inlet
2. Tanaina: Upper Inlet
3. Prince William Sound
4. Tlingit
5. Tlingit: Sitka
6. Tlingit: Nass (?)
7. Shuswap
8. Lillooet
9. Thompson
10. Okanagan
11. Sanpoil
12. Klamath
13. Kato (?)
14. Pomo

^aNumerals correspond with those in Figure 1; source materials on which these distributions are based are identified by the same numerals in Appendix A for plate armor, Appendix B for rod armor, Appendix C for slat armor; question marks (?) indicate questionable ascriptions--see appendices to clarify.

CONFIDENTIAL

DISTRIBUTION OF

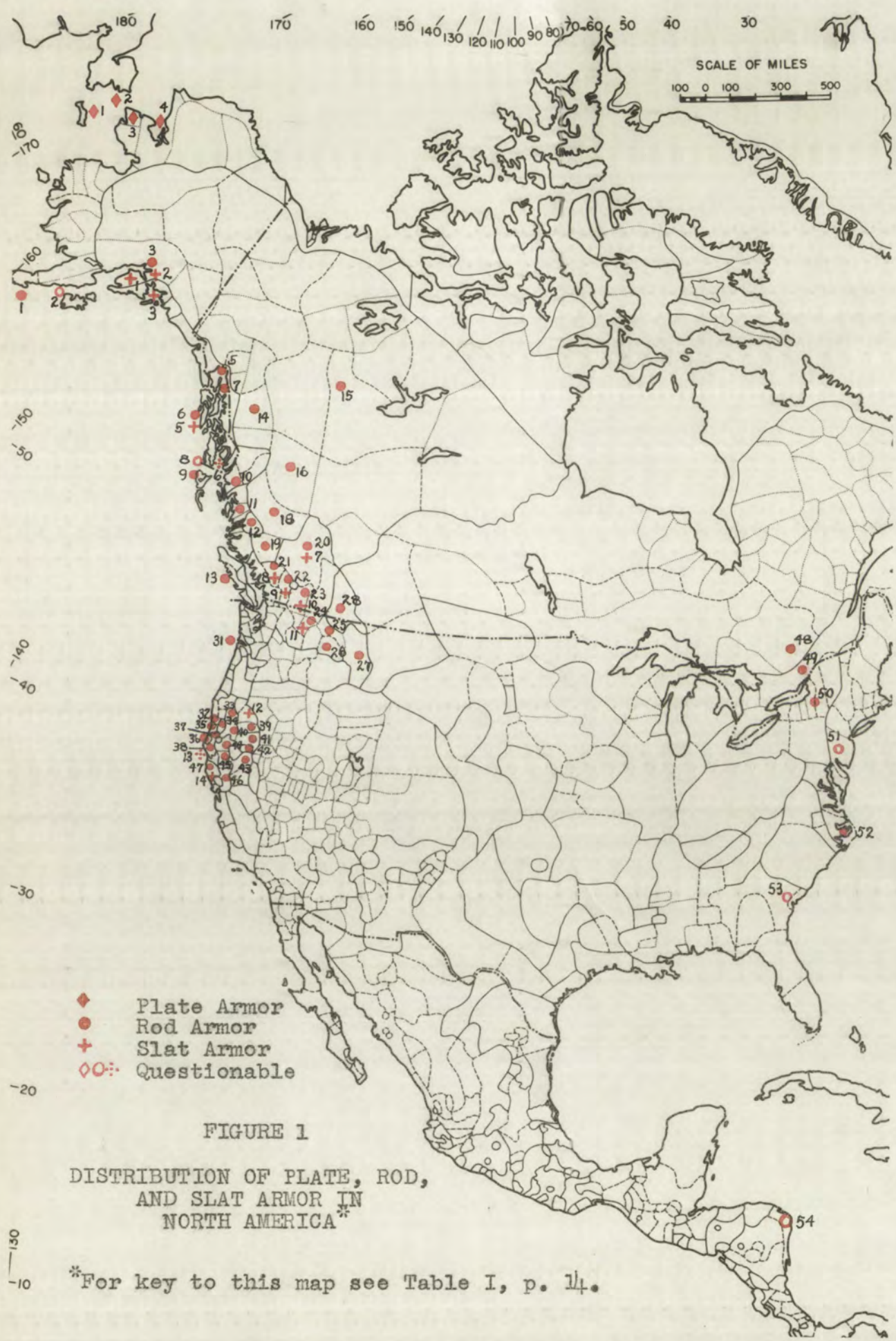
Place Names

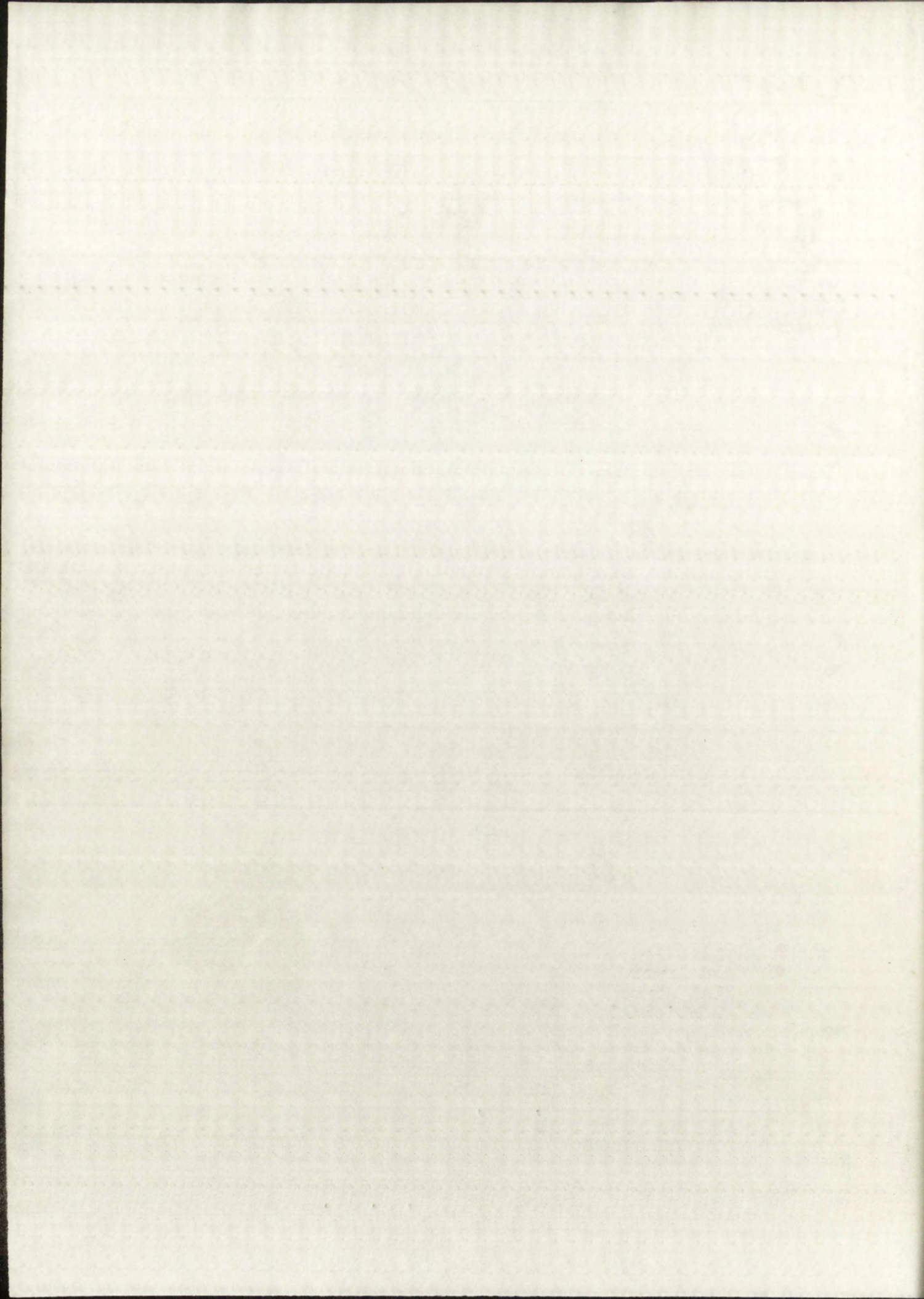
1. St. Lawrence
2. St. Lawrence
3. St. Lawrence
4. St. Lawrence

Red Names

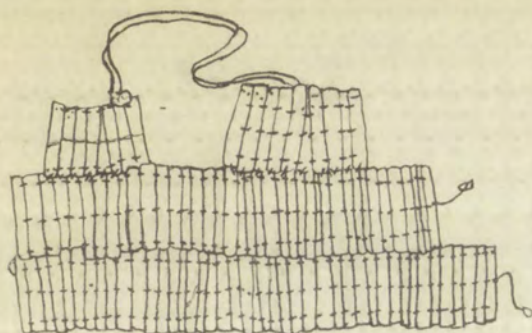
1. Alant
2. Lantay (?)
3. Tantalay
4. Tantalay
5. Tantalay
6. Tantalay
7. Tantalay
8. Tantalay
9. Tantalay
10. Tantalay
11. Tantalay
12. Tantalay
13. Tantalay
14. Tantalay
15. Tantalay
16. Tantalay
17. Tantalay
18. Tantalay
19. Tantalay
20. Tantalay
21. Tantalay
22. Tantalay
23. Tantalay
24. Tantalay
25. Tantalay
26. Tantalay
27. Tantalay
28. Tantalay
29. Tantalay
30. Tantalay

These names are given to the places on which the names are given by the same number as the name of the place, and are given to the places in the same order as the names of the places.





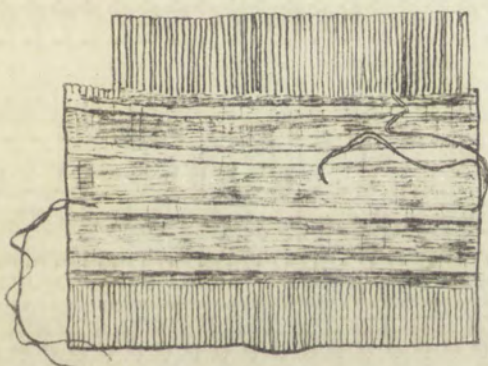
EXAMPLES OF PLATE, ROD, AND SLAT ARMORS



a. Eskimo plate armor, Cape Prince of Wales. From Hough, 1895, Pl. 3.



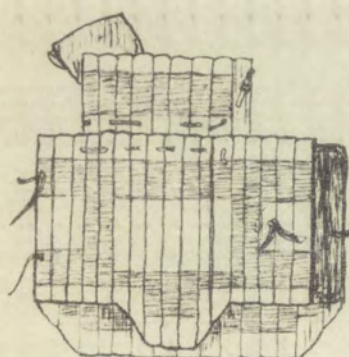
b. Aleut rod armor, Kagamil Island. From Dall, 1878, Pl. 6.



c. Taku (Tlingit) rod armor. From Hough, 1895, Pl. 13.



d. Shasta rod armor. From Hough, 1895, Pl. 14.

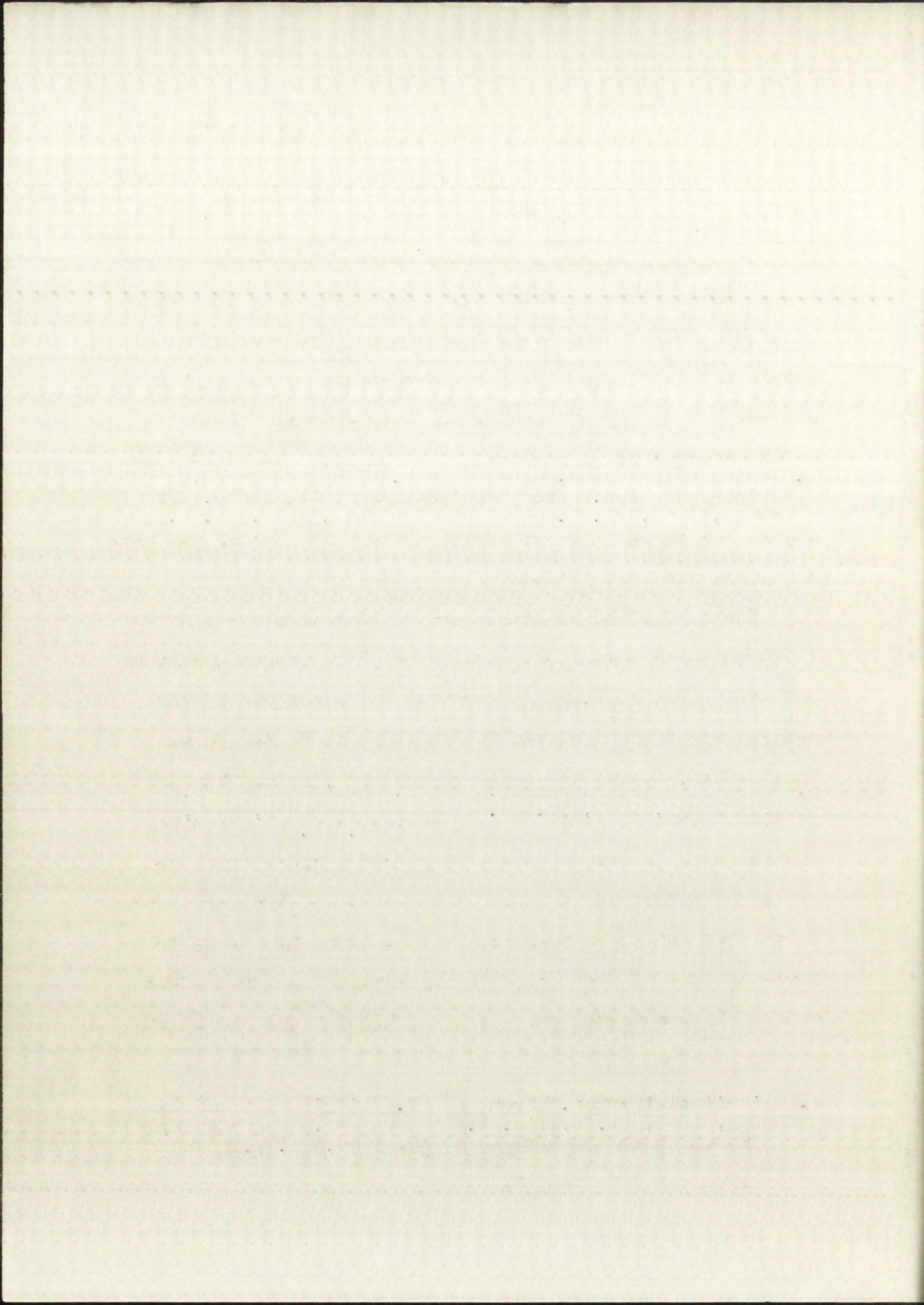


e. Tlingit slat armor. From Hough, 1895, Pl. 6, fig. 1.



f. Tlingit slat and rod armor. From Hough, 1895, Pl. 7.

FIGURE 2



of other citations for the Aleut did not mention plate or slat armor, the citation in question was regarded as in error. No further material was found that could confirm use of plate armor in the South Alaska area. At Cook Inlet and Prince William Sound Laguna found no armor of any type at any horizon in her archaeological excavations.³ This is worth noting since plate armor was the only New World armor type which was extensively represented by archaeological finds, due in part to the imperishable character of the bone and ivory used for plates.

There were two illustrations of Alaskan plate armor which pictured complete or nearly complete museum specimens and which gave a general picture of the character of the armor. One was a specimen collected by N. C. Nelson on Diomed Island⁴ and the other collected by H. R. Thornton at Cape Prince of Wales.⁵ They consisted of plates which showed three series of laterally placed perforations, one series at either end and one in the center. The plates were imbricated and laced parallel to each other into long bands, three to five of these bands being attached one above the other. Each specimen had a single full arm gap at one end

³Laguna, The Archaeology of Cook Inlet . . . , 1934.

⁴Hough, Primitive American Armor, 1895, Pl. 3.

⁵Ibid., Pl. 2, fig. 1.

of the upper band of plates, and the gap for the other arm would be created, upon closure of the jacket down one side, by the offset in the plates at the other end of the upper band. Only the specimen from Cape Prince of Wales showed the method of suspension, a single strap which would have passed diagonally over the shoulder from back of one shoulder to in front of the other.

The specimens illustrated were upper body, waist or hip length garments, and there is no way of knowing if there ever occurred in Alaska the full body length tunics made of many bands of plates which were illustrated for the Asiatic Chukchee⁶ and Koryak.⁷ Nor has there been recorded for Alaska the occurrence of the Asiatic conical plate helmet which has been illustrated for the Chukchee⁸ and Koryak,⁹ although Collins thought he had found a single plate from such a helmet at his excavations on St. Lawrence Island.¹⁰

⁶Bogoras, The Chukchee, 1904-9, fig. 84a.

⁷Ibid., fig. 84b. Jochelson, The Koryak, 1905-8, fig. 98.

⁸Bogoras, op. cit., fig. 84a, fig. 89c.

⁹Ibid., fig. 84b; fig. 89a,b. Jochelson, loc. cit.

¹⁰Collins, Archeology of St. Lawrence Island . . ., 1937, p. 225.

of the upper band of glass, and the lower band would be exposed, upon removal of the upper band. Only the specimen from the lower band, the method of preparation, passed diagonally over the specimen, so in front of the other. The specimen from the lower band, the method of preparation, even occurred in Alaska, the lower band of glass with the specimen from the lower band, the method of preparation, Alaska the occurrence of the lower band of glass, which has been observed, although Collins observed, such a pattern at the same time.

⁶Bogers, The Glass, 1937, p. 100.
⁷Ibid., The Glass, 1937, p. 100.
⁸Bogers, op. cit., 1937, p. 100.
⁹Ibid., The Glass, 1937, p. 100.
¹⁰Collins, The Glass, 1937, p. 100.

Arm braces of plates were pictured for the Koryak¹¹ and braces and greaves of the same construction for the Chukchee,¹² but neither of these were cited for Alaska.

However, the construction of the Alaskan forms of plate armor varied in no essential from the Siberian forms immediately to the west of them. The perforations of the New World plates found in archaeological sites seemed normally to be six in number, placed laterally two at each end and two at the center, as indicated by the finds of Collins,¹³ Geist and Rainey,¹⁴ and Giddings.¹⁵ Thordeman's illustration of various Old World plates indicated that those forms were a bit more variable as to the number and placement of perforations than the Alaskan examples, but, as with the latter, normally showed a grouping into three clusters.¹⁶ According to the same Alaskan sources given above, the perforations of the Alaskan plates were sometimes round and

¹¹Jochelson, loc. cit.

¹²Bogoras, op. cit., fig. 91.

¹³Collins, loc. cit.

¹⁴Geist and Rainey, Archaeological Excavations at Kukulik . . ., 1936, p. 111.

¹⁵Giddings, The Arctic Woodland Culture . . ., 1952, Pl. 40, fig. 1-7.

¹⁶Thordeman, The Asiatic Splint Armour in Europe, 1933, fig. 11.

Five pieces of plates were found in the
 process and pieces of the same material in the same
 but neither of these plates was found in the same
 However, the composition of the plates was
 almost varied in no essential way. The plates were
 directly to the west of the main group of plates.
 World plates found in the same area were found
 to be six in number, plates of the same material
 two at the center, no indication of the same
 Galt and Rainey, 1930, p. 111.
 tion of various Old World plates found in the same
 were a bit more variable in the same area and
 perforations than the plates found in the same
 latter, normally showed a slight difference in
 According to the same authors, the plates found in
 formations of the same area.

11. Johnson, loc. cit.
 12. Rogers, op. cit. p. 111.
 13. Galt and Rainey, 1930, p. 111.
 14. Galt and Rainey, 1930, p. 111.
 15. Galt and Rainey, 1930, p. 111.
 16. Galt and Rainey, 1930, p. 111.
 17. Galt and Rainey, 1930, p. 111.
 18. Galt and Rainey, 1930, p. 111.

sometimes square with no indication that their shape had any regional or temporal implications. Indeed, Geist and Rainey found both perforation types represented in each of several horizons at St. Lawrence Island.¹⁷

The citations were not sufficiently numerous to allow conclusions as to the preferred material for the construction of plates. Most sources named bone or ivory, although almost surely some of the sources did not concern themselves with trying to distinguish critically one material from the other. Antler, it was noted, was the material used at Kotzebue Sound,¹⁸ and iron plates were known to have been used in Alaska,¹⁹ apparently being traded into the area. Thus it appears that although plate armor seemed to offer little variation on form within its New World limits, it did prove to have been susceptible to adaptation to local materials.

There was some evidence to the effect that the appearance of plate armor in Alaska was relatively recent. Already mentioned was its peripheral situation with regards to an apparently old and much wider occurrence in Asia. That Alaskan plate armor showed even less variability as to form

¹⁷Geist and Rainey, op. cit., pp. 142, 193.

¹⁸Giddings, op. cit., p. 91.

¹⁹Hough, op. cit., pp. 632-33; Pl. 2, fig. 2.

sometimes occurs in the
any regional or local
history found in the
several provinces
The objects were
conclusions at the
tion of objects, that
almost entirely
with trying to
other. And, of
Kosmanovskaya
used in Alaska,
There is a
little variation
prove to have
etc.

There was some
end of pipe
mentioned was
apparently old
Alaskan

17
18
19

than did plate armor in Asia seems also to emphasize its youthfulness. However, the best indication of a recent appearance was presented by archaeological stratigraphy.

Stratigraphic information relative to armor plates has been presented by several fieldworkers. Geist and Rainey at St. Lawrence Island found armor plates in three houses and associated caches, representing three chronologically successive occupations, the latest being modern and the other two being what the authors called "Recent Prehistoric".²⁰ Although plates were considerably more common in the second most recent house than in the most recent itself,²¹ they were much more rare in the oldest house than in either of the two more recent ones.²² One plate was found "associated definitely" with a Birnirk type harpoon head in a test cut,²³ and, although the authors listed two other cultural horizons, Thule and Punuk, between the "Recent Prehistoric" and Birnirk,²⁴ the find did not upset a frequency center in the "Recent Prehistoric." Furthermore, a single association with one harpoon head, the age of which was indicated by

²⁰ Geist and Rainey, op. cit., pp. 111, 159, 193.

²¹ Ibid., p. 142.

²² Ibid., p. 159.

²³ Ibid., p. 229

²⁴ Ibid., p. 225.

typology only, is not free from the suspicion of eccentric coincidence.

Another site on St. Lawrence Island, investigated by Collins, produced armor plates in an artifact assemblage predominantly Punuk in nature. However, there was sufficient other artifactual material in the assemblage to indicate contemporaneity with a horizon at another village thought to be probably early Eighteenth Century in date.²⁵

On the mainland at Kotzebue Sound, Giddings found armor plates in the Intermediate Kotzebue site but none in the sites away from the coast up the Kobuk River.²⁶ This armor-bearing horizon was dated by dendrochronology at A.D. 1550.²⁷ The immediately preceding local cultural horizon, Old Kotzebue, which was dated by the same method at A.D. 1400, produced no armor plates.²⁸

It appears then that plate armor did not make its appearance in Alaska until the proto-historic period, possibly not before the Sixteenth Century.

In summary, it has been seen that there existed an unbridged distributional gap between Alaskan plate armor and

²⁵Collins, op. cit., pp. 188-89.

²⁶Giddings, op. cit., pp. 91-2.

²⁷Ibid., p. 9.

²⁸Ibid.

1942-1943

typology only. In this case, the evidence is
circumstantial. Another name on the list is
Gollins, produced in 1942. It is
predominantly found in the
other articles, and it is
contemporaneous with the other articles. It is
to be probably that it is a
On the list of names, it is
also placed in the list of names
the list away from the
armor-bearing. It is
A.D. 1940. The
was, old weapons, which are
A.D. 1900, produced in
It seems that the
appearance in the
not before the
In summary, the
united states

27 Collins, on the list
28 Collins, on the list
29 Collins, on the list
30 Collins, on the list

all other armors of the New World. Alaskan plate armor did not vary essentially in material and construction from Asiatic plate armors. It existed directly contiguous and peripheral to Asiatic plate armors. And lastly, Alaskan plate armor appeared to be chronologically recent in the New World relative to its occurrence in Asia. This evidence, taken with the evidence for other slat armor affinities to be presented in the next section of this paper, renders it probable that Alaskan plate armor and other New World armors represented separate areas of usage not directly related.

all other answers to the question of whether the
plate is very much tilted. The answer is that it is
... Atlantic plate. ... The answer is that it is
perpendicular to the Atlantic plate. The answer is that it is
plate arrow opposite to the Atlantic plate. The answer is that it is
New World relative to the Atlantic plate. The answer is that it is
taken with the evidence of the Atlantic plate. The answer is that it is
be presented in the Atlantic plate. The answer is that it is
probably that Atlantic plate. The answer is that it is
represented separately from the Atlantic plate.

THE
BOARD

III. THE ARMOR ASSOCIATION OF WESTERN NORTH AMERICA

The aboriginal use of armor in western North America was very extensive. Here was located not only the largest continuous block of armor usage on the continent but also the greatest variety in armor types. Essentially two armor groups, or families, may be distinguished for this area simply on the basis of radical contrast in construction techniques; these groups were hide armor and western rod armor, the latter also incorporating slat armor as will be seen later.

Each of these armor groups possessed its individual and continuous distribution, with that of hide armor defining in itself the total range of armor in the West--from southern Alaska into Mexico, and from the Pacific into the Great Plains. The distribution of rod armor in the West was restricted to the more western portion of the hide armor area and was virtually entirely contained within it. However, it is not proposed here that two such contrasting types of armor as these possessed a common historical denominator. What does seem important is the direct association and alternative, or almost alternative, usage of the two types within the more restricted regional limits of western rod armor. It is this fact, coupled with the belief that western rod armor was independent from all other American armors--to be

substantiated later--that qualifies uniting these two armor types in a generalized western armor tradition.

Rod and Slat Armor in Western North America.¹

Rod armor in North America appears to have occurred in two separate areas between which there existed a gap, unbridged by any similar armor. The first of these was in western North America from central California to Cook Inlet, Alaska and the Aleutian Islands, with an eastern limit coincident with the eastern edge of the Plateau. The second area extended from shortly north of the eastern Great Lakes and St. Lawrence River southward to the Atlantic coast of the Southeast and could not be extended west of that axis. No strongly defined native armor tradition connecting the two areas could be demonstrated, and no citation for rod armor itself could be found to fill the intervening gap. The western distribution will be considered first, with particular emphasis placed upon defining a generalized western rod armor type and upon comparing slat armors with the rod armor type.

There was a very great similarity between the armors of the West and the slat armors of the same area, as will

¹See the rod and slat armor distributions in Table I, p. 14, and Figure 1, p. 15. For representative examples of rod and slat armor see Figure 2, p. 16.

be shown in the forthcoming analysis. It will be seen that the only stable variation between the two was whether or not the long elements used in the armor were round or flat in cross-section. Because of this similarity, it was not always clear in the literature which type of armor was being referred to. Some of the authorities utilized undoubtedly used one or the other term to refer to the general category of rod-slat armor while meaning specifically only one of the types. But such incidences would be few in number and could not appreciably alter the general rod and slat armor distributions as presented here.

One confusion was noted regarding the proper identification of rod and slat armor. Hrdlička described Aleut armor as being composed of "narrow wooden slats" and referred to an illustration in Dall's 1878 report as an example of "one such armor."² An examination of the photographic illustration in Dall which Hrdlička referred to (see Figure 2b, p. 16) revealed that the vest of armor in question was not composed of slats but was instead made up of cylindrical rods, and, furthermore, it was described as such by Dall himself.³ It may have been just this or a similar error

²Hrdlička, The Aleutian and Commander Islands . . ., 1945, p. 433.

³Dall, Remains of Later Prehistoric Man . . ., 1878, Pl. 6; p. 18.

that led Quimby to state that the Aleut possessed slat armor as well as rod armor, a fact not borne out by any of the other sources for the Aleut.⁴

Of the boundaries of western rod armor, probably the most sharply defined was that of its southern extension in California. A thorough perusal of the literature failed to push it south of the latitude of San Francisco Bay. Indeed, for some groups in the vicinity and south of that line actual negative statements of occurrence were obtained for rod armor, or armor in general, which were not refuted by other sources. The groups in this negative category were the Wappo,⁵ Nisenan or Southern Maidu,⁶ Lake Miwok,⁷ and the Costano, Salinan, Chumash, Serrano, and Gabrielino.⁸

The Basin flank of this distribution was hardly less well defined. No source on this area which was checked produced a citation for rod armor, and again a number of negative statements denying rod armor or armor in general were obtained to substantiate this absence. Those groups

⁴Quimby, Aleutian Islanders . . ., 1944, p. 16.

⁵Loeb, The Western Kuksu Cult, 1932, p. 106.

⁶Voegelin, Northeast California, 1942, p. 73.

⁷Gifford and Kroeber, Pomo, 1937, p. 142.

⁸Harrington, Central California Coast, 1942, p. 15.

that led directly to the discovery of the same.

as well as the other.

Other sources have been contacted.

Of the possibility of a further investigation.

most sharply defined.

California. A group of people.

push it south of the California border.

for some groups of people.

negative statements of information.

either, or some of the other.

sources. The group of people.

Wagon, Wagon, Wagon.

Coastal, Coastal, Coastal.

The Coast Guard.

well defined. The Coast Guard.

and a clear view of the situation.

five statements of information.

obtained to substantiate the information.

obtained to substantiate the information.

obtained to substantiate the information.

obtained to substantiate the information.

obtained to substantiate the information.

obtained to substantiate the information.

obtained to substantiate the information.

obtained to substantiate the information.

represented by negative statements were the Mono,⁹ Owens Valley Paiute,¹⁰ various groups of Northern Paiute,¹¹ and Paviotso.¹² For this last group, the Paviotso, Curtis simply said they had no armor, speaking generally, but Lowie indicated the Pyramid Lake Paviotso did at least have a form of hide tunic armor.¹³

The eastern and southern limits of rod armor in the Plateau seemed fairly well defined. Wissler stated that among the Blackfoot "Wooden armor seems to have been unknown",¹⁴ and a negative statement was obtained for the twined rod jacket among the Kutenai by Ray.¹⁵ Spinden said that "Slat armor was apparently unknown" among the Nez Perce, presumably meaning the general category of rod and slat armor.¹⁶ The Umatilla and Klikitat did not use the twined

⁹Curtis, The North American Indian, 1907-26, Vol. 15, p. 58.

¹⁰Steward, Ethnology of the Owens Valley Paiute, 1933, p. 259.

¹¹Stewart, Northern Paiute, 1941, p. 386.

¹²Curtis, E. S., op. cit., Vol. 15, p. 71.

¹³Lowie, Notes on Shoshonean Ethnography, 1924, p. 245.

¹⁴Wissler, Material Culture of the Blackfoot Indians, 1910, p. 163.

¹⁵Ray, Plateau, 1942, p. 153.

¹⁶Spinden, The Nez Perce Indians, 1907-15, p. 228.

rod jacket according to Ray's informants.¹⁷

The exact nature of the rod armor boundary in Oregon and Washington was rather obscure. Although there seems little doubt that the California distribution connected with the Northwest Coast and Plateau, very few citations could be located to fill the gap. However, this fact was not complicated by any significant citations for negative occurrence in the intervening area. Hide armor was noted by several sources to have been used by Oregon Coast groups, and Curtis said of the Tolowa and Tututni that "The material culture in general strongly resembles that of the Klamath river, but various modifications tending toward that of the north coast type appear. Thus, rod-armor gives place to the long elk-hide shirt exclusively."¹⁸ Klimek partially refuted this by attributing twined rod armor to the Tolowa, although he appeared to have gotten his information from someone else whom he did not cite.¹⁹ Lacking further data, the present information seems to indicate that the rod armor distribution swung inland from the Oregon Coast, leaving that domain exclusively to hide armor. The meager and inadequate sources

¹⁷Ray, loc. cit.

¹⁸Curtis, E.S., op. cit., Vol. 13, p. 97.

¹⁹Klimek, The Structure of California Indian Culture, 1935, Table 5.

and Jackal according to the evidence.
The exact date of the murder is not known.
and Washington was present at the time of the murder.
Little doubt that the murder was committed by the
the Northwest Coast Indians, who are known to be
be located in the hills of the Northwest Coast.
blinded by any of the evidence.
in the interview with the Northwest Coast Indians.
sources to have been present at the time of the murder.
side of the Police and the Northwest Coast Indians.
in general, the Northwest Coast Indians are known to be
various medical cases, and the Northwest Coast Indians
type appear. The Northwest Coast Indians are known to be
side shift exclusively, and the Northwest Coast Indians
by accumulating evidence and the Northwest Coast Indians
appeared to have been present at the time of the murder.
when he did not die, and the Northwest Coast Indians
testimony seems to indicate that the Northwest Coast Indians
then swung inland, and the Northwest Coast Indians
exclusively to the Northwest Coast Indians.

17 Ray, loc. cit.
18 Curtis, E.B., loc. cit.
19 Klink, E.B., loc. cit.
1935, Table 2.

for that area, however, suggest the hiatus is of literary origin.

The Mackenzie-Yukon perimeter of western rod armor was vague. The lack of published material on the area thwarts any thorough and intensive coverage. The fact that the few existing sources indicated rod armor to be present among the western Mackenzie groups, while the subject was not mentioned for groups further to the east, indicated a probable boundary coincident with those western groups.

It should be pointed out that the use of negative statements of occurrence, as used in the previous paragraphs to emphasize armor distribution boundaries, are of doubtful value in themselves alone. Most of the material on western armors was derived from field work with native informants in the present century. The instability of the use of native armor in a European contact situation is evident, and the inability of a modern day informant to remember the time when such armor was used is to be expected. However, if negative statements were used in areas where other sources have failed to indicate the occurrence of a specific trait, such negative statements lend extra substantiation to the absence.

The category of North American slat armor included all armors constructed by connecting long elements, flat in cross-section, which occurred outside the area of the Alaskan plate armor. Two peculiarities of the slat armor distribution

for that area, however, and the results are given in the
original.

... The Mackenzie River... The Mackenzie River...
The Mackenzie River... The Mackenzie River...
any thorough and extensive...
existing sources...
western Mackenzie...
for groups further...
coincident with the...

It should be noted...
statements of...
to emphasize...
value in...
answer was derived...
the present...
error in a...
instability of a...
such error was...
statements were...
to include the...
five statements...

The category of...
errors...
cross-section...
this...
this...

were particularly noteworthy. One of these was that it coincided with that of western rod armor. Thus we find it listed from the Tanaina²⁰ in the north to the Pomo²¹ in the south and well distributed in the area between the two polar extremes. Slat armor citations, however, represented substantially fewer groups throughout this total range than did those of rod armor.

The second peculiarity noted in the slat armor distribution was that virtually all the groups to whom this type of armor was attributed also had rod armor attributed to them by the same or other sources.

The coincidence of the two total ranges, the lack of direct continuity of slat armors, and the coincidence of the two types within the same native groups suggested, even without further knowledge of construction details, that some type of direct relationship existed between rod and slat armor.

A consideration of the design and construction techniques of these armors in western North America indicated very strongly that a single recurring complex of traits was involved for both varieties. The use of rods or slats, of course, was the characteristic trait in the complex. It was

²⁰Osgood, Tanaina Culture, 1933, p. 704.

²¹Loeb, op. cit., p. 13.

invariable by virtue of having been singled out as being sufficiently distinctive to serve as a type basis. The associated traits in the complex were the connecting of the rods or slats in close parallel fashion by twining or weaving them together with some sort of cordage; the restriction of the armor to short, upper body lengths; the customary use of only single horizontal bands of rods; the use of a single connected piece of armor wrapped entirely around the body jacket-like; and sleeveless construction.

For most of the western groups rod construction was indicated in the sources by such words as rods, sticks, switches, or round applied to the basic wood material in the armor.

Bearing on the problem of slat armor, a very interesting combination of both slats and rods was reported separately and illustrated for the Tlingit by Niblack and Hough.²² Although these armors were essentially composed of slats, rods have been added at the sides to give greater flexibility and were treated the same as the slats as far as twining was concerned (see Figure 2f, p. 16.) Here then was as direct an association between rod and slat constructions as can be expected.

²²Niblack, The Coast Indians . . ., 1890, Pl. 14, fig. 49, citing Lisianski. Hough, Primitive American Armor, 1895, n., p. 636, Pl. 7-8.

invariable by virtue of the fact that the
sufficiently the same as the
associated trials in the same way as the
nodes or steps in the same way as the
them together with the same way as the
the error to show, however, that the error
of only single points in the same way as the
connected piece of error, however, that the error
jacket-like; and otherwise, however, that the error
How most of the error, however, that the error
indicated in the same way as the error, however, that the error
with, or even, however, that the error, however, that the error
the error.
bearing on the error, however, that the error, however, that the error
combination of such error, however, that the error, however, that the error
and illustrated for the error, however, that the error, however, that the error
Although these error, however, that the error, however, that the error
nodes have been shown, however, that the error, however, that the error
ity and were treated, however, that the error, however, that the error
was concerned (see, however, that the error, however, that the error
direct an association, however, that the error, however, that the error
can be expected.

Some sort of wood was almost the invariable material from which the rods were made and was so indicated in a majority of sources by such terms as wood, wooden, sticks, or by direct naming of some type of wood as willow or service berry. Only one material other than wood was found to have been used for rods in the West. For the Flathead Ray cited "twisted strips of elk rawhide" used as rods.²³ Since the use of this material was not mentioned elsewhere in the literature it appeared to be a unique local variation. Those groups for whom the material of rod construction was not specified very probably used some woody material.

It is significant that the information on slat armor in western North America showed wood to have been the only material used for slats. With due regard for the regionalisms in the availability of materials, this fact further allied slat armor conceptually to its close associate, wooden rod armor, and contrasted it to the bone, ivory, and antler plate armor.

The term twining is used rather loosely in this study, due principally to the lack of exactness in the original descriptions. All that is meant here is the use of continuous strands of cordage in any weaving technique to join rods or slats vertically in parallel order. Apparently the

²³Ray, loc. cit.

CONFIDENTIAL

SECRET

Some sort of... from which the... it is necessary to... direct manner... heavy. Only one... been used for... related since... use of this... literature is... Those groups... not specified... It is also... in western... material used... claims in the... which also... wooden rod... another kind... The central... the primary... descriptions... more... both on...

usual method was an over-and-under technique, treating the rods as the woof and the cordage as the warp.

The geographical stability of twining or weaving the rods in rod armor together in parallel fashion was remarkable. For the vast majority of groups throughout the range of western rod armor, the choice of words in the descriptions gave an indication of the method of attaching the rods together. The twining technique was taken to be indicated by such words as twined, interlaced, enlaced, woven, or wickered. Only one group, the Aleut, was found to have definitely used a method of attachment other than twining, with no use of the twining technique indicated whatever. Dall's photograph of an excellent specimen of Aleut armor clearly indicated that the connecting cordage was passed through perforations in the ends of the rods (see Figure 2b, p. 16.)²⁴ This accorded with the Aleut position in the North Pacific area where joining wood materials together by sewing was common; however, it is significant also that the Northwest Coast, where twining was the rule, fell into this area too.

For several groups there was some indication, based on the ambiguous wording of statements, that other techniques as well as twining were used. For the Thompson, in addition

²⁴Dall, loc. cit.

usual method was to...
...as the most...
...The...
...in the...
...For the...
...of western...
...films gave an...
...together...
...located by such...
...or...
...definitely...
...with no...
...film's...
...clearly...
...through...
...p. 16. This...
...North Pacific...
...seeing was...
...Northwest Coast...
...area too.

For several...
the...
as well as...

St. Paul, Ind. 1911

to twining,²⁵ we found Teit using the terminology "laced together."²⁶ For the Coeur d'Alene, as well as twining,²⁷ Teit said "woven or fastened together."²⁸ Despite these possible variances, it is apparent that twining enjoyed a remarkable stability throughout the distribution of rod armor in the West.

A large proportion of the slat armor sources did not specifically indicate if they were twined. Those that did indicate twining were relatively well separated at opposite ends of the distribution. Thus we found twined slats recorded for the Tlingit,²⁹ Haida,³⁰ and Klamath.³¹ Twining was probably used in most of the areas where this type of armor occurred, especially in view of the fact that it existed side by side with twined rod armor. It seems particularly noteworthy that twining for slat armor was very well

²⁵Ray, loc. cit.

²⁶Teit, The Thompson Indians . . . , 1900, p. 265.

²⁷Ray, loc. cit.

²⁸Teit, The Salishan Tribes . . . , 1930, p. 117.

²⁹Niblack, op. cit., p. 269; Pl. 14, fig. 49. Hough, loc. cit.

³⁰La Perouse, Voyage . . . , 1807, p. 327-28.

³¹Curtis, E.S., op. cit., Vol. 13, p. 171. Spier, Klamath Ethnography, 1930, p. 196.

to twinning, 25
... 26
... 27
... 28
... 29
... 30
... 31
... 32
... 33
... 34
... 35
... 36
... 37
... 38
... 39
... 40
... 41
... 42
... 43
... 44
... 45
... 46
... 47
... 48
... 49
... 50
... 51
... 52
... 53
... 54
... 55
... 56
... 57
... 58
... 59
... 60
... 61
... 62
... 63
... 64
... 65
... 66
... 67
... 68
... 69
... 70
... 71
... 72
... 73
... 74
... 75
... 76
... 77
... 78
... 79
... 80
... 81
... 82
... 83
... 84
... 85
... 86
... 87
... 88
... 89
... 90
... 91
... 92
... 93
... 94
... 95
... 96
... 97
... 98
... 99
... 100

25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100

101
102
103
104
105
106
107
108
109
110
111
112
113
114
115
116
117
118
119
120
121
122
123
124
125
126
127
128
129
130
131
132
133
134
135
136
137
138
139
140
141
142
143
144
145
146
147
148
149
150
151
152
153
154
155
156
157
158
159
160
161
162
163
164
165
166
167
168
169
170
171
172
173
174
175
176
177
178
179
180
181
182
183
184
185
186
187
188
189
190
191
192
193
194
195
196
197
198
199
200

verified for the northern Northwest Coast, that part of the slat armor distribution nearest the untwined Alaskan plate armor, thus sharply contrasting these two armors on this point of construction.

Only one slat armor group, the Thompson, was found to have definitely connected slats by perforating and lacing.³² This was not particularly strange, for shields made of slats or planks joined together were used by a number of people in the coastal and interior northwest. Shields of this type occurred among the Aleut,³³ Kaska,³⁴ Yellowknife and Chipewayan,³⁵ Shuswap,³⁶ and Okanagan and Sanpoil.³⁷ Of these, the Aleut and Kaska were definitely indicated to have sewn or laced the slats together by means of perforations. It is presumed that most of the other groups named did also, although the Shuswap³⁸ and Okanagan³⁹ used twining. Many

³²Teit, The Thompson . . . , 1900, p. 265, fig. 253.

³³Hrdlička, op. cit., p. 135; Pl. 35.

³⁴Honigsmann, The Kaska Indians, 1954, p. 94.

³⁵Hearne, A Journey . . . , 1911, p. 175-76.

³⁶Teit, The Shuswap . . . , 1909, p. 538.

³⁷Teit, The Salishan Tribes . . . , 1930, p. 257. Cline, et. al., The Sinkaiehk . . . , 1938, p. 55.

³⁸Teit, The Shuswap . . . , 1909, p. 538.

³⁹Cline, et. al., loc. cit.

verified for the...
that error...
...
point of construction.

Only one...
have definitely...
This was not...
on planks joined...
in the coastal...
type occurred...
Chipsaway, 32...
these, the about...
new or faced...
It is presumed...
although the...
...

-
- 32 Test, The...
33 Test, The...
34 Test, The...
35 Test, The...
36 Test, The...
37 Test, The...
38 Test, The...
39 Test, The...

shields have been recorded for the interior northwest which were described simply as being wooden, and they were quite probably references to the slat or plank shield.

Slats were recorded as used to supplement hide armor, by being attached to the breast portion of hide cuirasses, among the Nass Tlingit⁴⁰ and the Kato.⁴¹

As an adjunct to rod twining there was no imbricating of the long elements in western rod and slat armor. The use of rods in themselves, whether twined or not, would tend to preclude imbrication, and twining is a technique that does not yield itself to overlapping construction with either rods or slats. All slat armor which was described in sufficient detail indicated there was no imbrication of the elements as there was with Alaskan plate armor.

Despite the stability of twining in rod armor construction, the data suggested no similar stability in the material used for twining. Although no specific material was named for most groups, those that were represented were well scattered over the total western rod armor range. Cordage materials named were babiche or some sort of hide, sinew, goat wool, bark, hemp, iris, wool, human hair, nettles, and sisal. It is reasonable to assume that many of the earlier,

⁴⁰Niblack, op. cit., p. 269.

⁴¹Curtis, E.S., op. cit., Vol. 14, p. 8.

non-ethnographic field observers were not especially concerned with critically distinguishing the actual cordage material used, introducing some amount of error into the little data on the subject. Undoubtedly, there was considerable latitude of usage within the individual native groups themselves.

Babiche or hide was indicated more often than other cordage materials, but even then such references represented only five groups. No geographical continuity for this material was observed as it was cited for widely separated peoples, the Tanaina,⁴² Carrier,⁴³ Chilcotin,⁴⁴ Chilula,⁴⁵ and Atsugewi.⁴⁶ Whether any of the other specific cordages mentioned had their own regional distributions was not ascertainable due to the lack of pertinent statements.

A geographical cleavage on a more generalized level was noticeable between the use of vegetable or animal materials for cordage. Vegetable fiber was indicated slightly more often than animal materials throughout the rod armor distribution except for those peoples in the Mackenzie-Yukon

⁴²Osgood, The Ethnography of the Tanaina, 1937, p. 111.

⁴³Morice, Notes Archaeological . . ., 1894, p. 117.

⁴⁴Farrand, The Chilcotin, 1899, p. 647.

⁴⁵Driver, Northwest California, 1939, p. 391.

⁴⁶Garth, Atsugewi Ethnography, 1953, p. 154.

non-ecological... the... of...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

... of the... in the...

Culture group, the Tlingit, and the Aleut. For the latter babiche or hide was recorded for the Tanaina, Carrier, and Chilcotin as cited above, goat wool cord for the Tahltan,⁴⁷ and also sinew for the Tahltan⁴⁸ as well as for the Aleut⁴⁹ and Tlingit.⁵⁰ Too many gaps occurred in the knowledge of the cordages used to allow specific definition of this cleavage between the areas referred to and the rest of the Northwest Coast and Plateau. But this seemed to conform to the general string-using areas: sinews or babiche in the north, vegetal fibers in the south and Plateau.

In the case of slat armor the information on cordages used did not conflict with that for rod armor and even tended to follow the cleavage noted above. For the known twined varieties of slat armor we found sinew specified by Hough for the Sitka Tlingit,⁵¹ and Cook recorded it as used for slat armor by the natives he saw at Prince William Sound

⁴⁷Emmons, The Tahltan Indians, 1911, p. 116.

⁴⁸Ibid.

⁴⁹Dall, op. cit., p. 18. Hrdlička, op. cit., pp. 132, 135.

⁵⁰Hough, op. cit., n., p. 639.

⁵¹Hough, op. cit., n., p. 636.

Collected from the ...
habits or ...
Chilodactylus ...
and also ...
and ...
the ...
average ...
Northwest ...
the ...
north, ...
In the ...
used ...
ended to ...
twined ...
rough for ...
for ...

-
1. Parsons, The Fishes of ...
2. Idid.
3. Idid.
135.
40 rough ...
41 rough ...

in 1778.⁵² The Tanaina used babiche;⁵³ the Thompson utilized buckskin or bark strings for their perforated and laced form of slat armor;⁵⁴ and nettle-cord was mentioned by both Curtis and Spier for Klamath slat armor.⁵⁵

As much a part of the rod armor tradition as twining was the customary use of only a single horizontal band of rods, which restricted this type of armor to a short jacket of no greater than hip length. This seemed to be a significant characteristic of the western rod armor complex by virtue of contrast with a few known examples of armor composed of multiple bands of rods or plates fastened one above the other. We found that the use of two connected vertical tiers of rods occurred among the Hupa as at least one of their forms,⁵⁶ and also among the Aleut.⁵⁷ The plate armor of Alaska and Siberia characteristically utilized multiple bands of plates, sometimes in full body length forms. Furthermore, an additional contrast was

⁵²Cook, A Voyage to the Pacific Ocean, 1785, Vol. 2, p. 372.

⁵³Osgood, Tanaina Culture, 1933, p. 704.

⁵⁴Teit, The Thompson Indians . . . , 1900, p. 265.

⁵⁵Curtis, E.S., op. cit., Vol. 13, p. 171. Spier, loc. cit.

⁵⁶Curtis, E. S., loc. cit.

⁵⁷Dall, op. cit., Pl. 6.

in 1778. The ...
utilized ...
loaded ...
by both ...
As much ...
was the ...
ruda, who ...
of no ...
cant ...
vines of ...
posed of ...
bove the ...
vertical ...
one of ...
plate ...
ized ...
length ...

25000 ...
p. 372 ...
25000 ...
25000 ...
25000 ...
25000 ...
25000 ...
25000 ...

provided to these short length rod armors by the coexistence with them, throughout almost all their western range, of hide armors in full body length forms.

Few sources indicated verbally that rod armor was composed of only one tier of rods, but the descriptions seemed almost always to imply this. More conclusively, all the illustrations of rod armor which were located, excepting the one for the Aleut,⁵⁸ represented single-tier short forms. Furthermore, these illustrations, though few in number, covered all the major areas of the rod armor distribution in the West, including the Tlingit,⁵⁹ Thompson,⁶⁰ Karok,⁶¹ Hupa,⁶² Klamath,⁶³ Shasta,⁶⁴ and Pomo⁶⁵ (see the Shasta example in Figure 2d, p. 16.)

Relative to the slat armors, the only specific information we had on this point of single or multiple tiers

⁵⁸Ibid.

⁵⁹Niblack, op. cit., Pl. 13, fig. 43. Hough, op. cit., Pl. 15, fig. 1.

⁶⁰Teit, op. cit., fig. 254.

⁶¹Kroeber, Handbook . . ., 1925, Pl. 18.

⁶²Hough, op. cit., Pl. 18, fig. 1.

⁶³Ibid., Pl. 15, fig. 2.

⁶⁴Ibid., Pl. 14.

⁶⁵Barrett, Material Aspects of Pomo Culture, 1952, Pl. 26.

came from the Tlingit and the Thompson. The latter were clearly indicated to have used a single-tiered form,⁶⁶ but for the Tlingit the only examples described in sufficient detail or illustrated indicated double-tiered, twined slat jackets⁶⁷ (see Figure 2e, p. 16.) These Tlingit examples were constructed of separate front and back pieces, connected at the sides by thongs. The lower band was composed of long slats and covered the torso up to the armpits like the basic band of rods in rod armor. To the upper edge of both the front and back piece was attached a band of shorter slats to protect the upper chest and throat and the back of the shoulders and neck. This upper band was abbreviated in length to provide cuts or notches for the accommodation of the arms. Although these double-tiered slat armors possessed a superficial similarity to the plate armor style of the Bering Straits Eskimo, one need not go so far afield. The closest double-tiered armor was that of the Aleut, which, significantly, was of rod construction and not of plate, and structurally resembled the Tlingit slat armor much more closely than did Eskimo plate armor.

Rod armor of short, upper body lengths was indicated

⁶⁶Teit, op. cit., fig. 253.

⁶⁷Niblack, op. cit., Pl. 14, fig. 49, citing Lisianski. Hough, op. cit., Pl. 6-8.

for the vast majority of groups in illustrations or by the use of such terms as jacket, vest, and waistcoat, or by statements that the armor reached only to the waist, belt, hips, or thighs. Length for a small minority of groups was indicated only ambiguously by the words cuirass or corselet, traditional terms for upper body armor. This information, taken in view of the inherent physical limitations to single-tier rod and slat construction, assured us that the upper body forms were characteristic of western rod and slat armor. The only groups for whom information on length of the armor was lacking presented only gaps in knowledge within the wider area and probably followed the tradition of rod and slat armor current among the peoples around them.

Virtually all western North American rod and slat armors were essentially wrap-around forms which passed entirely around the upper body in a jacket-like manner. Illustrations of these armors showed this to be clearly so, and a few statements said or implied it. Most sources failed to elaborate in such detail, but the frequent use of the word jacket in referring to rod and slat armor seemed to indicate that full upper body coverage by a single connected piece of armor was meant.

There was one type of deviation from this rod jacket pattern that was noticed, and this for the northern California-Oregon area. Referring to the tribes of this area,

Schoolcraft presented a description of armor "which covers them in front" and was "composed of thin parallel battens of very tough wood, woven together by a small cord."⁶⁸

An illustration of the armor was presented with this statement, and it indicated clearly that it was nothing more than a rectangular apron of twined rods, which would only have covered the front of the upper body. String loops were attached to each of the upper corners for the arms and tie strings for the waist at the lower corners. Schoolcraft obtained this armor information from G. F. Emmons who made a journey from the Columbia River to California in 1841, passing through the country of several native groups. However, the armor was identified with no specific group; in view of the following citation it may well have been a California group.

It seems reasonable to assume that this is the same type of rod armor which was listed for the northern Yana by Gifford and Klimek as "Armor a frontpiece of rods and elkskin."⁶⁹ Since rod jacket armor was included on the same trait list for the southern Yana and hide armor for the same northern Yana, there could be no doubt that a separate

⁶⁸Schoolcraft, Archives . . . , 1860, Vol. 3, p. 216.

⁶⁹Gifford and Klimek, Yana, 1936, p. 82.

... of very faint ...

... them in ...

... of very faint ...

... An illustration of ...

... ment, and it ...

... than a ...

... have covered ...

... were attached to ...

... and also ...

... early ...

... who made a ...

... in 1891, ...

... groups. ...

... group; in ...

... been a ...

... If ...

... type of ...

... by ...

... effort.

... same ...

... same ...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

frontpiece was meant by the statement.

There was even some basis for recognizing this breast-piece or apron rod armor as a member of a standard style or cut of armor, of either rods or hide, localized in northern California and adjacent southern Oregon. According to Voegelin, hide armor, said to have been made like an apron and lacking any backpiece, was ascribed to the Klamath by an eastern Achomawi informant.⁷⁰ An "Elkhide breast plate" was ascribed to the Tillamook by Barnett in addition to the long hide tunic armor included on the same trait list.⁷¹ These rod and hide breast armors may have borne some relationship to the frequently cited curtain shields of this same area which will be discussed in the next chapter.

The illustrations of rod and slat armor previously cited for Aleut, Tlingit, Thompson, Karok, Hupa, Klamath, Shasta, and Pomo clearly indicated that both of these armors were sleeveless in nature. Actual statements to this effect for rod armor were made for the Chilcotin⁷² and Takelma.⁷³ The only record of sleeved rod armor which was encountered

⁷⁰Voegelin, Northeast California, 1942, p. 73; p. 192.

⁷¹Barnett, Oregon Coast, 1937, p. 170.

⁷²Farrand, loc. cit.

⁷³Sapir, Notes on the Takelma Indians . . . , 1907, p. 273.

Through the use of the...
There was one...
place on...
one of...
California and...
Voegelin, the...
and lacking any...
an eastern...
was...
long...
These...
relationship...
same...
The...
called for...
Alaska, and...
were...
for...
The only...

1. ...
2. ...
3. ...
4. ...
5. ...
6. ...
7. ...
8. ...
9. ...
10. ...

was that presented by Turney-High for the Kutenai; the sleeves were of "flat pieces of rod mail" which covered only the upper arms and were lashed to the armor proper, apparently after it was put on.⁷⁴ On the basis of the few illustrations and most descriptive statements, however, it is felt these armors may be safely said to have been characteristically sleeveless throughout their western ranges.

It would be interesting to see a distributional breakdown of a number of rod armor features which were poorly documented in the literature. They are pertinent for discussion, however, as they did point the direction to some broad generalizations.

One of these was the presence or absence of cuts in the upper edge of the armor for the accommodation of the arms and the placement of these cuts. Only one example of western rod armor with no accommodation whatever for the arms was noted. This was the Sitka Tlingit example illustrated by Niblack.⁷⁵ It was simply a straight, untailored band of rods, and, lacking arm spaces, could have been worn no higher on the body than the level of the armpits. A very

⁷⁴Turney-High, . . . Kutenai, 1941, p. 87.

⁷⁵Niblack, op. cit., Pl. 13.

similar example for the Taku Tlingit was illustrated by Hough,⁷⁶ but it possessed a single cut at one corner (see Figure 2c, p. 16.) If it were an accommodation for an arm and the armor were drawn up so that the notch fitted under one arm, the other arm would have been immobilized inside the armor. The two examples, because of their great similarity and coming from the same area, should be considered essentially as only variations of the same type. Whether it was used by other tribes in this area or elsewhere could not be determined because of lack of descriptive material.

The standard accommodation for the arms in western red armor can safely be said to have consisted of two arm cuts or notches, allowing the armor to come up high to protect the upper chest and throat and the back of the shoulders and neck. Double arm cuts were definitely indicated or implied for the Aleut,⁷⁷ Chilcotin,⁷⁸ Thompson,⁷⁹

⁷⁶Hough, op. cit., Pl. 13.

⁷⁷Dall, op. cit., Pl. 6.

⁷⁸Farrand, op. cit., p. 647.

⁷⁹Teit, op. cit., fig. 254.

Okanagan,⁸⁰ Coeur d'Alene,⁸¹ Kutenai,⁸² Klamath,⁸³ Shasta,⁸⁴ Karok,⁸⁵ Hupa,⁸⁶ Chilula,⁸⁷ and Pomo.⁸⁸ This was a geographically diversified sample and almost surely indicated the mode for rod armor in all its western range. The information on slat armor indicated agreement with the rod armor style. The Tlingit⁸⁹ and Thompson⁹⁰ examples illustrated, showed the double cuts or notches for the accommodation of both arms.

A further elaboration of rod armor seldom described was the tailoring of the upper or lower edges, giving more specific protection to the back of the neck or to the groin. This sort of tailoring represented a departure from the

⁸⁰Cline, et. al., loc. cit.

⁸¹Teit, The Salishan Tribes . . . , 1930, p. 117.

⁸²Turney-High, loc. cit.

⁸³Hough, op. cit., Pl. 15, fig. 2. Spier, loc. cit.

⁸⁴Hough, op. cit., Pl. 14.

⁸⁵Kroeber, loc. cit.

⁸⁶Hough, op. cit., Pl. 15, fig. 1.

⁸⁷Driver, loc. cit.

⁸⁸Barrett, loc. cit.

⁸⁹Niblack, op. cit., Pl. 14, fig. 49. Hough, op. cit., Pls. 6-8.

⁹⁰Teit, The Thompson Indians . . . , 1900, fig. 253.

SECRET

Chenango, 85
Ketchikan, 85
... locally situated ...
... for the ...
... on that ...
The ...
the double ...
...
...
A further ...
was the ...
specific ...
This sort of ...

-
- 80 ...
 - 81 ...
 - 82 ...
 - 83 ...
 - 84 ...
 - 85 ...
 - 86 ...
 - 87 ...
 - 88 ...
 - 89 ...
 - 90 ...
 - 91 ...

concept of a rod jacket as being a simple rectangular band or mat of rods, with or without arm spaces, wrapped around the body. The high back-collar, created by the use of longer rods in the middle of the band, was indicated for the Aleut,⁹¹ Klamath,⁹² Shasta,⁹³ Hupa,⁹⁴ and Maidu⁹⁵ (see Figure 2b and d, p. 16.) Such a high collar certainly could not safely be said to be representative of western rod armors; a number of exceptions were known. These known exceptions were from the Sitka Tlingit⁹⁶ and the Thompson,⁹⁷ which seemed to suggest that the straight upper edge was more prevalent in the north and the high back-collar in California. Again, this could not be a final conclusion since information was lacking for the vast majority of the rod armor groups. However, the few examples of slat armor which were illustrated, representing only the Tlingit and Thompson cited previously, led to this conclusion, for they all possessed untailored upper edges.

⁹¹Dall, op. cit., Pl. 6.

⁹²Hough, op. cit., Pl. 15, fig. 2.

⁹³Ibid., Pl. 14.

⁹⁴Ibid., Pl. 15, fig. 1.

⁹⁵Kroeber, op. cit., p. 400.

⁹⁶Niblack, op. cit., Pl. 13, Hough, op. cit., Pl. 13.

⁹⁷Teit, op. cit., fig. 254.

concept of a ... of the body ... longer ... the ... Figure 2b and ... could not ... not ... exceptions ... which seemed ... were provided ... California ... since information ... not ... which were ... Thompson cited ... all possessed ...

21 ... 22 ... 23 ... 24 ... 25 ... 26 ... 27 ... 28 ... 29 ... 30 ...

Even less conclusive was the information on the tailoring of the lower edge for the protection of the groin and free movement of the legs. Information of this sort was found for only a few groups, primarily those for which we have illustrations, and such tailoring was indicated for only three, the Aleut⁹⁸ (see Figure 2b, p. 16), Hupa,⁹⁹ and Chilula.¹⁰⁰ In the Hupa example the curvature of the lower edge may have been due to slippage of the rods and not to true tailoring; the illustration did not make this clear. The technique was extended to slat armor also. Two of the slat armor examples illustrated and attributed to the Sitka Tlingit by Hough were toed-in at the bottom front edge¹⁰¹ (see Figure 2e and f, p. 16.)

Another insufficiently documented feature of rod and slat armor construction was the position of closure of the two edges when the band was wrapped about the body. The armor was indicated as fastened up the back for Aleut,¹⁰²

⁹⁸Dall, loc. cit.

⁹⁹Hough, op. cit., Pl. 15, fig. 1.

¹⁰⁰Driver, op. cit., p. 391.

¹⁰¹Hough, op. cit., Pl. 6, 7, 8.

¹⁰²Dall, op. cit., p. 18, Pl. 6.

Chilula,¹⁰³ and Atsugewi.¹⁰⁴ The Aleut situation, however, presented a problem. Although Dall stated that his fine specimen from a Kagamil mummy was "fastened behind," his illustration of the same armor specimen indicated it had a high collar between the arm notches, which would have made it difficult indeed to wear if it were closed down the back¹⁰⁵ (see Figure 2b, p. 16.) Spier stated that Klamath slat armor opened "in the front,"¹⁰⁶ The photographic illustration published by Kroeber of a Karok man in rod armor showed the two ends of the jacket overlapping and apparently tied at the front.¹⁰⁷ The illustrations in Hough of armors ascribed to the Shasta, Hupa, and Klamath,¹⁰⁸ were of types which have the raised upper edges in the middle of the band, which would have hindered the wearer except when closed down the front (see Figure 2d, p. 16.) This seemed a reasonable conclusion also for the Maidu high-collared armor cited by Kroeber.¹⁰⁹ The symmetrical

¹⁰³Driver, loc. cit.

¹⁰⁴Garth, Atsugewi Ethnography, 1953, p. 154.

¹⁰⁵Dall, loc. cit.

¹⁰⁶Spier, loc. cit.

¹⁰⁷Kroeber, op. cit., Pl. 18.

¹⁰⁸Hough, op. cit., Pl. 14-15.

¹⁰⁹Kroeber, op. cit., p. 400.

nature of some armors would permit closure either down the back or the front, and without the source indicating how closure was made it cannot be known. Teit's illustration of Thompson armor¹¹⁰ presented this problem. The same applied to the Sitka Tlingit band armor illustrated by Niblack,¹¹¹ which, by virtue of lacking arm cuts and having to be worn under the arms, could have been closed at the side just as well as the front or the back. For this example, however, side closure seemed most likely for the very similar example from the Taku Tlingit, illustrated by Hough,¹¹² which had a single corner notch in an otherwise straight band, seemingly for the purpose of accommodating one free arm (see Figure 2c, p. 16.) The short hide armor from this northern Northwest Coast area also fastened down the right side. The only other instances of closure at the side definitely indicated were for the Kutenai¹¹³ and the Klamath.¹¹⁴

It is obvious that little regional specialization on closure can be read into such limited knowledge of occurrence.

¹¹⁰Teit, loc. cit.

¹¹¹Niblack, loc. cit.

¹¹²Hough, op. cit., Pl. 13.

¹¹³Turney-High, loc. cit.

¹¹⁴Voegelin, op. cit., p. 192.

The information on the northern California area at least suggested a wide latitude of variability on this point as all three possibilities, back, front, and side closure, were found to occur. Since single piece armors with double arm cuts, each placed about equal distance from the ends, and with the edge between the arm cuts raised to form a protective collar, seemed to be the form most widely distributed in northern California and Oregon, it is felt that closure down the front, as a logical corollary, was equally as prevalent in that area. The two piece jackets and straight bands of the northern Northwest Coast suggested that side closure had some stability in the armor tradition of that area. The illustrations available for Tlingit slat armor confirmed such a conclusion, for they all indicated closure at the right side¹¹⁵ (see Figure 2e and f, p. 16.) The illustrated Thompson slat armor could have been closed at the front or the back although the author did not clarify this point.¹¹⁶ These weak implications are all that can be ventured on the problem of regionalism on this point.

There appeared some differentiation in western North America in the application of cordage for twining or

¹¹⁵Niblack, op. cit., Pl. 14, fig. 49. Hough, op. cit., Pl. 6-8.

¹¹⁶Teit, op. cit., fig. 253.

The information on the ... suggested a ... All three possibilities ... were found to ... and with the ... protective ... exhibited in ... of course down the ... as prevalent in ... straight bands ... that side ... of that area ... armor ... closure of the ... The ... at the front on the ... this point, ... ventured on the ... There ... America in the ...

connecting the rods. In the most common method the successive cords formed wide bands of twining which sometimes took in the whole length of the rods from the top to the bottom of the jacket (see Figure 2c and d, p. 16.) This method was indicated for the Tlingit,¹¹⁷ Klamath,¹¹⁸ Shasta,¹¹⁹ Hupa,¹²⁰ Pomo,¹²¹ and possibly the Karok.¹²² In another the individual cords were spaced. Groups employing this method were the Aleut, who did not twine,¹²³ Thompson,¹²⁴ and Kutenai.¹²⁵ It was possibly implied by the statements for the Tanaina¹²⁶ and the Carrier.¹²⁷ The wide band application of cord twining was the most widely distributed and

¹¹⁷Niblack, op. cit., Pl. 13. Hough, loc. cit. Hough, op. cit., Pl. 13.

¹¹⁸Hough, op. cit., Pl. 15, fig. 2.

¹¹⁹Ibid., Pl. 14.

¹²⁰Ibid., Pl. 15, fig. 1.

¹²¹Barrett, loc. cit.

¹²²Kroeber, op. cit., Pl. 18.

¹²³Dall, op. cit., Pl. 6.

¹²⁴Teit, op. cit., fig. 254.

¹²⁵Turney-High, op. cit., p. 86.

¹²⁶Osgood, The Ethnography of the Tanaina, 1937 , p. 111.

¹²⁷Morice, Notes Archaeological . . ., 1894, p. 117.

connecting the ...

also ...

in the whole ...

of the ...

was indicated ...

large, ...

the ...

method ...

and ...

for the ...

region of ...

117 ...

118 ...

119 ...

120 ...

121 ...

122 ...

123 ...

124 ...

125 ...

126 ...

127 ...

128 ...

was probably the mode for the rod armor for most of western North America. The slat armors also apparently followed this pattern generally; the illustrated Tlingit forms showed the wide band type of twining.¹²⁸

The rod armor of the West has been indicated to be of simple construction. Essentially it was a band of rods which could be completely opened up flat like a mat and wrapped around the torso when used. In keeping with this simple construction, there was generally no specific tailoring or attachment of additional pieces to protect the tops of the shoulders. The only means to hold the armor upon the body was the use of simple straps or thongs of leather or cordage which closed the arm spaces and simply suspended the armor from the shoulders. Such usage was noted for the Aleut,¹²⁹ Thompson,¹³⁰ Okanagan,¹³¹ Kutenai,¹³²

¹²⁸Nielsen, op. cit., Pl. 14, fig. 49. Hough, op. cit.,

¹²⁹Dall, loc. cit.

¹³⁰Teit, op. cit., p. 265.

¹³¹Cline, et. al., loc. cit.

¹³²Turney-High, op. cit., p. 87.

was probably the same as the one found in the
North American. The body of the specimen is
this section of the body is the same as the one
the whole body is the same as the one
The body of the specimen is the same as the one
single specimen. The body of the specimen is the same as the one
which could be a specimen of the same as the one
wrapped around the body of the specimen is the same as the one
single specimen. The body of the specimen is the same as the one
wing or attachment of the body of the specimen is the same as the one
top of the head of the specimen is the same as the one
upon the body of the specimen is the same as the one
feet or some other part of the body of the specimen is the same as the one
extended the body of the specimen is the same as the one
noted for the head of the specimen is the same as the one

-
- 128. Head of the specimen is the same as the one
 - 129. Tail of the specimen is the same as the one
 - 130. Tail of the specimen is the same as the one
 - 131. Tail of the specimen is the same as the one
 - 132. Tail of the specimen is the same as the one

Klamath,¹³³ Shasta,¹³⁴ Hupa,¹³⁵ and Atsugewi.¹³⁶ The only examples known which did not have any device to keep the armor from slipping were the two straight untailored bands illustrated for the Tlingit by Niblack and by Hough.¹³⁷ It is presumed that most of the other citations refer to armor which used shoulder straps for suspension.

The same techniques of suspension as used on rod armor were used also on slat armor. A Thompson slat vest used thong suspension from the shoulders,¹³⁸ and Spier cited the same technique for the Klamath.¹³⁹ Two shoulder straps were used on two of the illustrated Tlingit examples.¹⁴⁰ One Tlingit example, however, was held in place by a broad band of elk skin which passed over the right shoulder and fastened on the left side by a loop and thong.¹⁴¹ This

¹³³Hough, op. cit., n., p. 640; Pl. 15, fig. 2.

¹³⁴Ibid., n., p. 640; Pl. 14.

¹³⁵Ibid., n., p. 640; Pl. 15, fig. 1.

¹³⁶Garth, op. cit., n., p. 154.

¹³⁷Niblack, op. cit., Pl. 13, 15. Hough, op. cit., Pl. 13.

¹³⁸Teit, op. cit., p. 265; fig. 253.

¹³⁹Spier, loc. cit.

¹⁴⁰Niblack, op. cit., Pl. 14, fig. 49. Hough, op. cit., n., p. 636; Pl. 7-8.

¹⁴¹Hough, op. cit., n., p. 636; Pl. 6.

Minneapolis, 133 Street, 133 Street, 133 Street

examples known to the public, and the public is

... the public is the public, and the public is

illustrated by the public, and the public is

is presented in the public, and the public is

which used in the public, and the public is

The same is the public, and the public is

were used also in the public, and the public is

through association in the public, and the public is

same technique in the public, and the public is

were used on the public, and the public is

One thing is the public, and the public is

hand of the public, and the public is

fashioned on the public, and the public is

133 Street, 133 Street, 133 Street

133 Street, 133 Street, 133 Street

133 Street, 133 Street, 133 Street

133 Street, 133 Street, 133 Street

133 Street, 133 Street, 133 Street

133 Street, 133 Street, 133 Street

same technique, it is worth noting, was used on a vest of Eskimo plate armor from Cape Prince of Wales.¹⁴²

Although upper body jackets were undoubtedly the principal armor form produced by the twined rod and slat method in the West, there was some slight indication that armor for other parts of the body was also occasionally produced by this technique, at least among the Tlingit, Haida, and Kutenai.

Hough illustrated a Tlingit greave in the U. S. National Museum which was composed of twined rods and slats in combination.¹⁴³ It was the only lower leg armor to be cited for western North America. For the Kutenai, however, Turney-High recorded twined rod "Leggings or greaves" for the upper legs.¹⁴⁴ In A.D. 1779 the Spaniard Maurelle visited the natives of Bucarrelli Bay, Alaska, presumably Kaigani Haida. He described their cuirasses as twined from "narrow slips of wood" and said that as well as these cuirasses "From the girdle to the feet, they wear a kind of apron, of the same manufacture as their cuirasses."¹⁴⁵ This

¹⁴²Ibid., n., p. 632; Pl. 2, fig. 1.

¹⁴³Ibid., p. 637; Pl. 269.

¹⁴⁴Turney-High, loc. cit.

¹⁴⁵La Perouse, A Voyage Round the World . . ., 1807, Vol. 1, pp. 327-28, an extract from the account of Maurelle.

CONFIDENTIAL

SECRET

name, location, and other information. The following information was obtained from the source:

1. The source is a high-ranking official in the Ministry of Defense, and is well-informed regarding the activities of the organization.

2. The source has been in contact with the organization for several years, and has observed its activities from within.

3. The organization is active in the area of defense, and is engaged in the development of new weapons and equipment.

4. The organization is active in the area of intelligence, and is engaged in the collection and analysis of information.

5. The organization is active in the area of sabotage, and is engaged in the planning and execution of sabotage operations.

6. The organization is active in the area of terrorism, and is engaged in the planning and execution of terrorist attacks.

7. The organization is active in the area of espionage, and is engaged in the collection and analysis of information.

8. The organization is active in the area of subversion, and is engaged in the planning and execution of subversive activities.

9. The organization is active in the area of propaganda, and is engaged in the dissemination of propaganda.

10. The organization is active in the area of recruitment, and is engaged in the recruitment of new members.

11. The organization is active in the area of training, and is engaged in the training of new members.

12. The organization is active in the area of logistics, and is engaged in the procurement and distribution of supplies.

13. The organization is active in the area of finance, and is engaged in the collection and management of funds.

14. The organization is active in the area of communication, and is engaged in the dissemination of information.

15. The organization is active in the area of security, and is engaged in the protection of its members and activities.

16. The organization is active in the area of research, and is engaged in the development of new technologies.

17. The organization is active in the area of development, and is engaged in the improvement of its infrastructure.

18. The organization is active in the area of administration, and is engaged in the management of its internal affairs.

19. The organization is active in the area of public relations, and is engaged in the dissemination of information to the public.

20. The organization is active in the area of international relations, and is engaged in the establishment of contacts with other organizations.

is the only known mention for western America of such lower body "aprons" of twined rod or slat construction.¹⁴⁶

In summary, western rod armor can be characterized as follows. It was most commonly constructed of wooden rods connected by cordage in a twining process. Typically, only a single tier of rods, worn vertically on the body, was used. The armor was restricted to short, upper body lengths which were wrapped around the entire torso and which were sleeveless. Other characteristics, not as well demonstrated but suggesting stability, were the addition of cuts or spaces in the upper edge of the armor for the accommodation of the arms, suspension of the armor from the shoulders by simple straps or thongs, and the pressing together of the twining cordage into broad bands or masses of twining.

Slat armor construction, it has been seen, followed this general characterization of rod armor, or its variations did not fall outside the range of variations in rod armor. There was a coincidence of the total ranges of rod and slat armor, with the slat armor distribution lacking direct continuity within the total range. The two types commonly existed side by side in the same group and were incorporated, in a few known examples, into the same piece

¹⁴⁶ See Table II, p. 59, for a list of occurrences of specific armor for the arms, legs, and lower body.

OCCURRENCE OF ARMOR FOR THE ARMS AND LEGS
AND KILT ARMOR IN NORTH AMERICA^a

Armor for the Arms

- | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Lillooet | Skin robe wrapped around left arm. |
| 2. Kutenai | Twined rod braces for upper arms. |
| 3. Iroquois (?) | Of "small pliable rings" (Charlevoix) |
| 4. Huron and
Iroquois (?) | Braces of twined rods. |
| 5. Tarascan | Braces of wood. |

Armor for the Legs

- | | |
|-----------------|--|
| 1. Tlingit | Greave of twined slats and rods. |
| 2. Kutenai | Twined rod greaves for upper legs. |
| 3. Iroquois (?) | Of "small pliable rings" (Charlevoix) |
| 4. Huron | Of twined rods. Champlain also illustrates possible Huron greaves. |
| 5. Penobscot | Greaves of birch bark. |
| 6. Nahua | Possible quilted cotton leg armor. |
| 7. Tarascan | Greaves of wood. |

Apron or Kilt Armor

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Haida: (Kaigani?) | A rod or slat apron below waist. |
| 2. Nootka | Blanket about the loins. (?) |
| 3. Huron (?) | Champlain illustrates rod (?) kilt. |
| 4. Penobscot | Skirt or kilt of birch bark. |

Full Body Armor Cited

- | | |
|----------|---|
| 1. Huron | "...covers a man from his head to his feet..." (Lalemant). Rod armor "...on their back and legs and other parts of their body..." (Sagard). |
|----------|---|

^aSub-titles and numerals correspond to those in Appendix D where they identify the sources for these citations.

Occurrence of the following species in the
of the following species in the

Section 1. 1st group

1. *Alouatta*
2. *Alouatta*
3. *Alouatta*
4. *Alouatta*
5. *Alouatta*

Section 2. 2nd group

1. *Alouatta*
2. *Alouatta*
3. *Alouatta*
4. *Alouatta*
5. *Alouatta*
6. *Alouatta*
7. *Alouatta*

Section 3. 3rd group

1. *Alouatta*
2. *Alouatta*
3. *Alouatta*
4. *Alouatta*

Section 4. 4th group

1. *Alouatta*

of armor. On the basis of this evidence and the distributional arguments against the continuity of Old World plate armor with New World armors, it is concluded that slat armor belonged to the same material tradition as rod armor and was only a regional variation of the rod armor theme.

Hide Armor in North America.

The creating of armor from hide was the most frequently cited armor construction for western North America. An examination of the data made it clear that these hide armors might be grouped into several classes based upon style and manner of use and upon contiguous occurrence. These classes were tunic or jacket armor, wide belt armor, and curtain shields.

Hide Tunic and Jacket Armor.¹⁴⁷ Hide tunic and jacket armor possessed so extensive and continuous a distribution that it may safely be called the typical hide armor style for the West. It occurred from the coast of southern Alaska southward into Mexico and from the Pacific eastward well into the Great Plains. The only major portions of western North America that could not be demonstrated to have used this type of armor were the larger part of the Great Basin and southern California.

¹⁴⁷ See the hide tunic and jacket armor distribution in Table III, pp. 61-62, and Figure 3, p. 63. See Figure 4, p. 64, for illustrations.

KEY TO FIGURE 3:
DISTRIBUTION OF TUNIC AND JACKET HIDE ARMOR IN NORTH AMERICA^a

1. St. Lawrence Is. (?) (L)	26. Twana; Chemakum; and Klallam
2. Tanaina: Tyonek area (L?)	27. Quinault
3. Tanaina: Middle Inlet and Kenai area (L?)	28. Kutchin
4. Tanaina: Lower Inlet and Kachemak Bay area (L?)	29. Hare
5. Tlingit (S,-)	30. Kaska, Upper Liard River (L,-)
6. Tlingit: Chilkat (S,-)	31. Tahltan
7. Tlingit: Lituya Bay	32. Sekani
8. Tlingit: Sanyakwan (L)	33. Western Dene (L,-)
9. Tlingit: Nass	34. Carrier (S)
10. Tlingit: Taku (S,-)	Babine
11. Haida: Bucarelli Bay (Kaigani ?) (L?)	35. Chilcotin (-)
12. Haida: North Island	36. Lillooet (L,-)
Haida: Massett (S)	37. Shuswap (L?,-)
Haida: Skedans (L) (S)	38. Thompson (L,+) (S)
13. Tsimshian proper	39. Okanagan (S) (L)
Tsimshian: Hartly Bay (S)	40. Sanpoil (L) (S)
14. Tsimshian: Gitksan (S)	41. Kalispel (S)
15. Kwakiutl (S?,-)	42. Flathead
16. Kwadiutl: Haisla (S)	43. Coeur d'Alene (L,-)
17. Kwakiutl: Haihais (S)	44. Nez Perce (L,+,-)
18. Kwakiutl: Bella Bella (?,-)	45. Yakima (?)
19. Kwakiutl: Kosquimo and Kwexa (S)	46. Klikitat (S)
20. Bella Coola (S)	47. Western Washington; Northwestern Oregon (L)
21. Salish: Klahuse (L,-)	48. Chinook: Kathlamet (?)
22. Salish: Squamish (L,-) (S)	49. Chinook: Lower (L,-) (S)
23. Salish: Cowichan proper (S)	50. Alsea (L)
24. Nootka (L) (S)	51. Siuslaw (L,-)
25. Puget Sound	52. Tututni (L,-)
	Galice Creek (L,-)
	Sixes River (L,-)

^aNumerals correspond to those in Figure 3; source materials on which this distribution is based are identified by the same numerals in Appendix E. (L) indicates long, tunic-like armor; (S) indicates short, jacket-like armor; (-) indicates armor is sleeveless; (+) indicates armor has sleeves; no symbol indicates preceding characteristics are undeterminable on basis of sources used. Question mark (?) indicates questionable ascription--see Appendix E to clarify. This list represents only tunic and jacket types of hide armor; wide belt armor is considered in Table V and Figure 5, and the curtain shield in Table VI and Figure 6.

DISTRIBUTION OF THE

1.	St. Lawrence
2.	Tennant
3.	Tennant
4.	Tennant
5.	Tennant
6.	Tennant
7.	Tennant
8.	Tennant
9.	Tennant
10.	Tennant
11.	Tennant
12.	Tennant
13.	Tennant
14.	Tennant
15.	Tennant
16.	Tennant
17.	Tennant
18.	Tennant
19.	Tennant
20.	Tennant
21.	Tennant
22.	Tennant
23.	Tennant
24.	Tennant
25.	Tennant
26.	Tennant
27.	Tennant
28.	Tennant
29.	Tennant
30.	Tennant
31.	Tennant
32.	Tennant
33.	Tennant
34.	Tennant
35.	Tennant
36.	Tennant
37.	Tennant
38.	Tennant
39.	Tennant
40.	Tennant
41.	Tennant
42.	Tennant
43.	Tennant
44.	Tennant
45.	Tennant
46.	Tennant
47.	Tennant
48.	Tennant
49.	Tennant
50.	Tennant
51.	Tennant
52.	Tennant
53.	Tennant
54.	Tennant
55.	Tennant
56.	Tennant
57.	Tennant
58.	Tennant
59.	Tennant
60.	Tennant
61.	Tennant
62.	Tennant
63.	Tennant
64.	Tennant
65.	Tennant
66.	Tennant
67.	Tennant
68.	Tennant
69.	Tennant
70.	Tennant
71.	Tennant
72.	Tennant
73.	Tennant
74.	Tennant
75.	Tennant
76.	Tennant
77.	Tennant
78.	Tennant
79.	Tennant
80.	Tennant
81.	Tennant
82.	Tennant
83.	Tennant
84.	Tennant
85.	Tennant
86.	Tennant
87.	Tennant
88.	Tennant
89.	Tennant
90.	Tennant
91.	Tennant
92.	Tennant
93.	Tennant
94.	Tennant
95.	Tennant
96.	Tennant
97.	Tennant
98.	Tennant
99.	Tennant
100.	Tennant

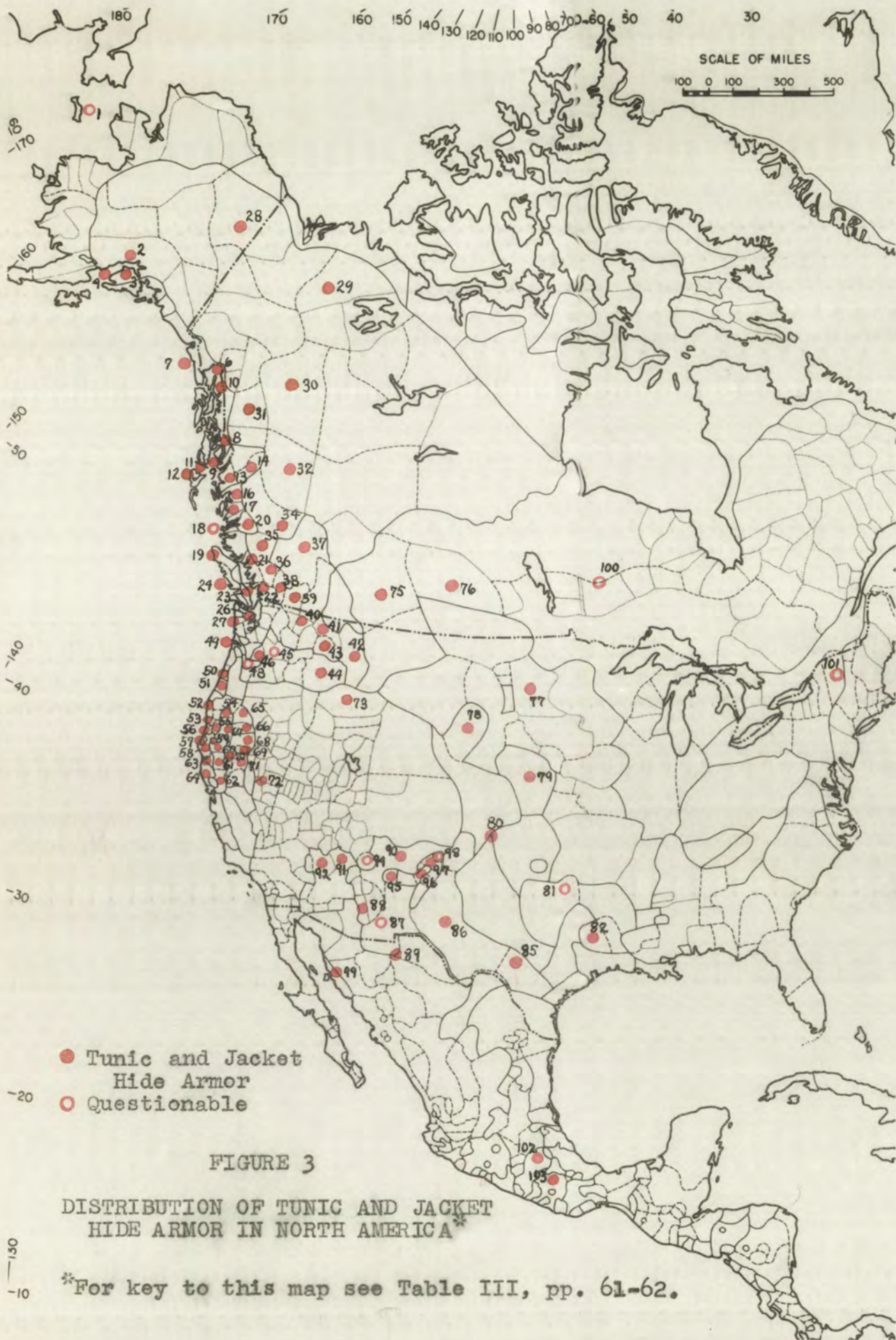
The following table shows the distribution of the
 same material in the same manner as the
 above, but in a different order. The
 numbers in the table are the same as
 those in the table above, but the
 order is different. The numbers in the
 table are the same as those in the
 table above, but the order is different.

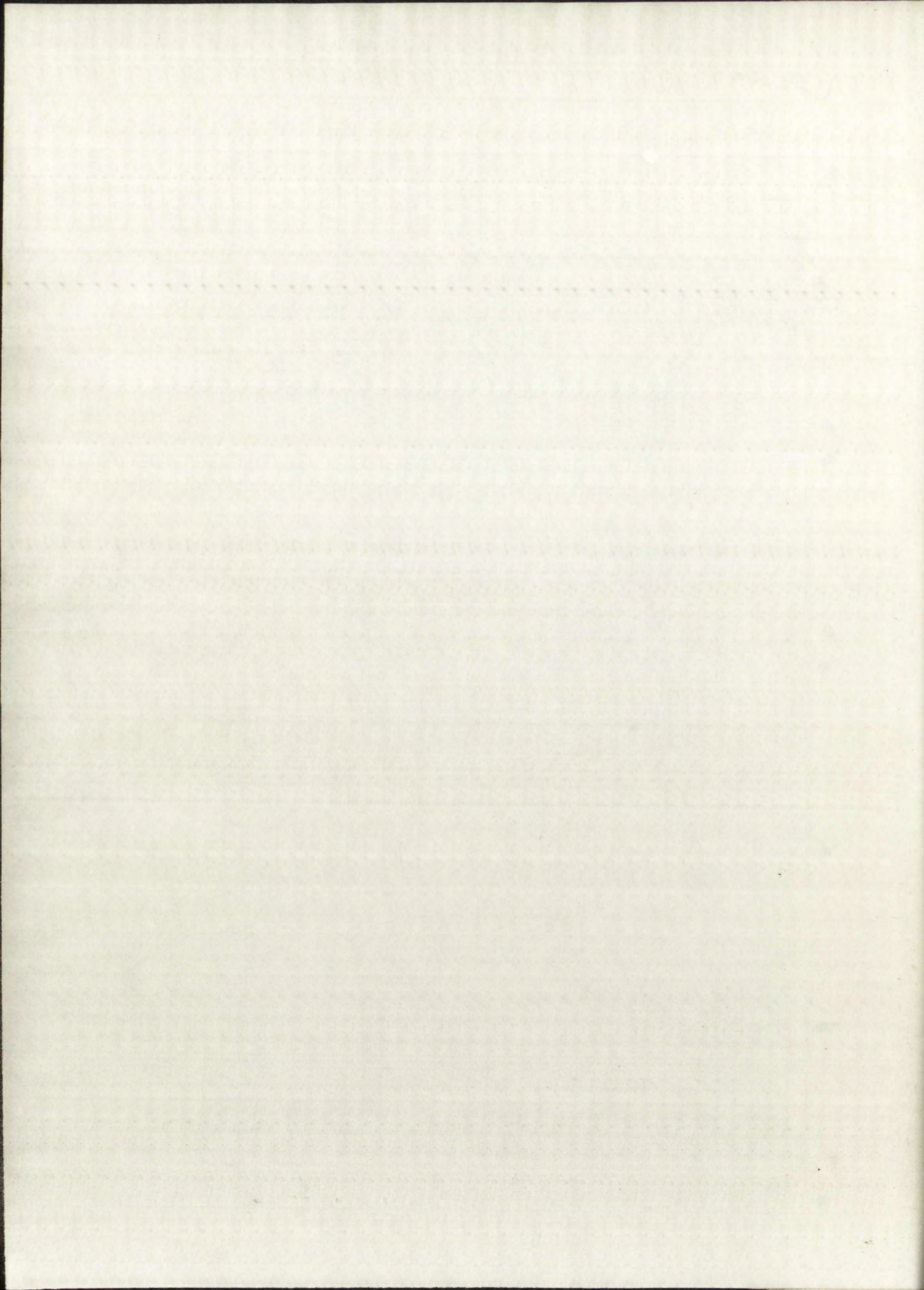
TABLE III (continued)

53.	Tolowa (L,-)	75.	Blackfoot (-)
	Chetco (L,-)	76.	Plains Cree
54.	Takelma (-)	77.	Yankton (+)
55.	Karok	78.	Cheyenne
56.	Yurok (L)	79.	Pawnee
57.	Wiyot (L)	80.	"Padouca"
58.	Hupa (L,-)	81.	Wichita (?)
	Chilula	82.	Hasinai
	Mattole	83.	Southwest
	Nongatl	84.	Apache
	Sinkyone (L)	85.	Apache, Eastern or Lipan
	Lassik (L)	86.	Apache, Mescalero
	Wailaki	87.	Apache: Gila (?)
	Kato (L)	88.	Apache, San Carlos
59.	Chimariko (L)	89.	Apache, Janos
60.	Wintu	90.	Navajo (L,+) (S,+)
61.	Wintun (L,-)	91.	Havasupai (L)
62.	Patwin	92.	Walapai
63.	Yuki (L)	93.	Pueblos
64.	Pomo	94.	Hopi (?)
65.	Klamath (-)	95.	Zuni
66.	Modoc	96.	Keres
67.	Shasta (L)	97.	Tewa
68.	Achomawi (L)	98.	Tiwa (?)
69.	Atsugewi (L)	99.	Seri (+)
70.	Yana (-)	100.	Eastern Cree; Northern
71.	Maidu (L)		Salteaux (?)
72.	Paviotso: Pyramid Lake,	101.	Iroquois, Mohawk (?)
	Fallon, Lovelock (L)	102.	Nahua
73.	Snake or Shoshoni (L,-)	103.	Mixtec
74.	Northern Plains		

• 2/20

1. 1997





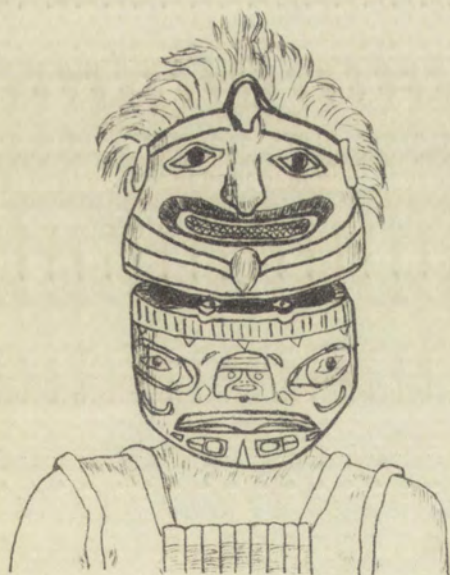
EXAMPLES OF HIDE ARMORS, HELMET AND VISOR,
AND EASTERN ROD ARMOR



a. Tlingit hide armor, short type. From Hough, 1895, Pl. 17.



b. Hupa hide armor, long type. From Hough, 1895, Pl. 20.

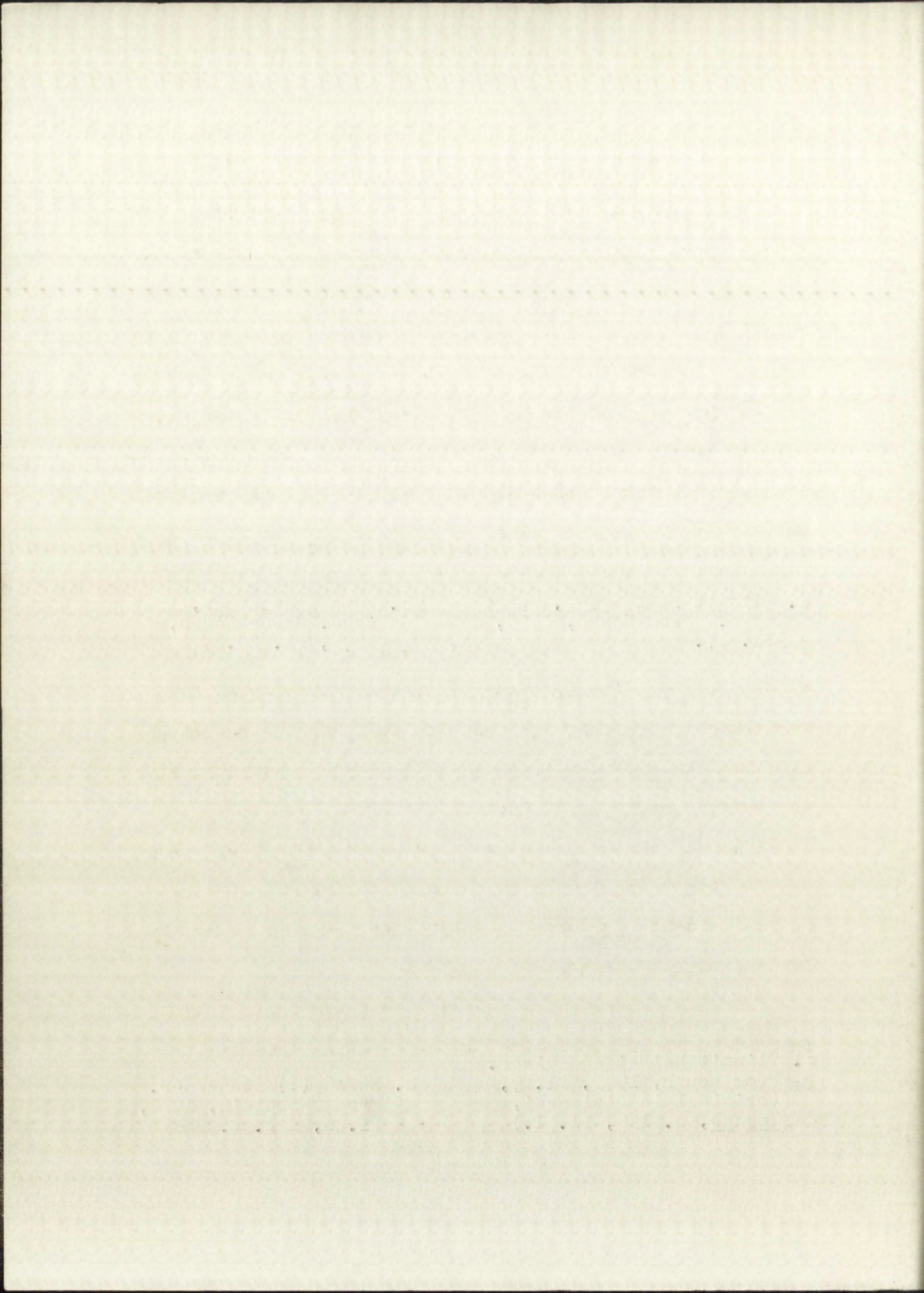


c. Tlingit helmet and visor. From Hough, 1895, Pl. 9, (original in Lisianski, Voyage, p. 150, Pl. 1.)



d. Huron (?) rod armor. From Champlain, 1929, Pl. 6, fig. E.

FIGURE 4



Hide armor of both long, or tunic style and short, or jacket style have been classed together in this study. A glance at Table III will help to illuminate the distributional relationship that pertained between these two varieties. Although the length of the armor was not indicated for all groups included in this distribution, it was apparent, at least, that the long tunic form was more nearly the standard for North America. This tunic style was recorded for virtually the total range of hide armor; the short jacket form, however, was found to have been commonly used in only the Northwest Coast and Plateau, where it was directly associated with, or occurred adjacent to the long tunic type of armor. The frequency with which the jacket form was cited in the northwest and the fact that it seemed to have had its own continuous distribution in that area did not permit a conclusion that it was simply an occasional variation of the more widely distributed tunic type. That the two styles were only of varietal difference, however, seemed evident, for their construction features were, excepting length, remarkably similar.

Several construction features were mentioned with sufficient frequency in the literature that they may be included in a general characterization of hide tunic and jacket armor. For one thing, it was apparent that this style of armor generally followed a basically untailed

... of the ...
... have been ...
... of the ...
... relationship ...
... Although the ...
... for all groups ...
... at least ...
... standard for ...
... for virtually ...
... form, however ...
... the Northwest ...
... associated with ...
... type of error ...
... was cited in the ...
... have had the ...
... not permit a ...
... variation of ...
... the two styles ...
... seemed evident ...
... cepin; length ...
... Several copies ...
... sufficient ...
... included in a ...
... jacket error ...
... style of error ...

pattern. It was formed by simply folding a roughly rectangular piece of hide around oneside of the body; the juncture of the two ends down the other side of the body was left open, or pinned only by a few tie strings or toggles. This wrap-around type of construction was definitely noted for the Tlingit,¹⁴⁸ Nootka,¹⁴⁹ Chinook,¹⁵⁰ Hupa,¹⁵¹ Sinkyone,¹⁵² and Klamath.¹⁵³ The hide armor which Drucker ascribed to the Oregon coast, including the Tolowa, Chetco, Galice Creek, Tututni, Sixes River, and Siuslaw, was inferred to have been of this wrap-around style since it was stated to have been of one-piece construction.¹⁵⁴

Most of the armors cited in the previous statement were folded around the left side, leaving the right side open. Accommodation for the left arm was by means of a slit or gap in the upper end of the folded edge and

¹⁴⁸Hough, op. cit., Pls. 16-19; Niblack, op. cit., pp. 268-70.

¹⁴⁹Drucker, . . . Nootkan Tribes, 1951, p. 335.

¹⁵⁰Ross, Adventures . . . , 1904, p. 104.

¹⁵¹Hough, op. cit., Pl. 20. Mason, The Ray Collection . . . , 1889, p. 230; fig. 105.

¹⁵²Nomland, Sinkyone . . . , 1935, p. 158.

¹⁵³Spier, Klamath . . . , 1930, p. 196. Voegelin, loc. cit.

¹⁵⁴Drucker, The Tolowa . . . , 1937, p. 170.

suspension was usually by joining the upper front and back edges over the right shoulder. All of them were sleeveless.

This characterization of hide tunics and jackets was not contradicted by the armor descriptions for any group in the general areas represented by the type citations above. It seems quite valid then to accept it as the usual type in the Northwest Coast, Plateau, and California. The extent of its incidence to the eastward was not certain, however. There was a little evidence suggesting that hide tunics in the Plains and Southwest may have possessed a construction which contrasted to that farther to the West.

Sleeves, of no more than elbow length, were cited for the hide armor of the Thompson,¹⁵⁵ Nez Perce,¹⁵⁶ Yankton,¹⁵⁷ Navajo,¹⁵⁸ and Seri.¹⁵⁹ Although sleeveless armor was recorded for the Blackfoot,¹⁶⁰ none of the other reports of hide armor in the Plains and Southwest gave information on this point.

¹⁵⁵Teit, op. cit., p. 265.

¹⁵⁶Curtis, E.S., op. cit., Vol. 8, p. 45.

¹⁵⁷Pond, Journal . . . , 1908, p. 354.

¹⁵⁸Hill, Navaho Warfare, 1936, p. 9.

¹⁵⁹Kroeber, The Seri, 1931, p. 16.

¹⁶⁰Secoy, Changing Military Patterns . . . , [1953] , p. 49, citing Cocking.

... This observation is not contradicted by the general aspect of the ...
edges over the ...

... This observation is not contradicted by the general aspect of the ...
edges over the ...
the Northwest ...
of the ...
There was a ...
the Plains and ...
which ...

... the ...
Havato, ...
corded for ...
this point.

155 ...
156 ...
157 ...
158 ...
159 ...
160 ...
p. 10, ...

The use of vertical slits in the lower edge of the long tunics, one in front and one in back, was cited for the Navajo; the purpose of the slits was to accommodate the unwieldy length of the garment to riding horseback.¹⁶¹ Secoy said that this was a feature of Apache and Plains armor in the early historic period;¹⁶² none of the sources consulted in the present study, however, substantiated such a conclusion, and the Navajo, as cited above, provided the only occurrence of the slit tunic encountered.

Other suggestions that the more eastern and southern of the hide armors possessed a special character were embodied in the following features. Closure of the armor down the front instead of down the side was attributed to the Nez Perce¹⁶³ and Navajo.¹⁶⁴ The armor of the Havasupai, according to Spier, was fastened close around the neck,¹⁶⁵ and Hill noted the same feature for the Navajo.¹⁶⁶ Walapai hide armor was described as composed of "a front and a back

¹⁶¹Hill, loc. cit.

¹⁶²Secoy, op. cit., pp. 17-18.

¹⁶³Curtis, E.S., loc. cit.

¹⁶⁴Hill, loc. cit.

¹⁶⁵Spier, Havasupai Ethnography, 1928, pp. 249-50.

¹⁶⁶Hill, loc. cit.

piece tied together under the arms, leaving a head hole";¹⁶⁷ Spier's description of Havasupai armor and Hill's account of Navajo armor cited above, although not specific, suggested a similar tailored shirt construction. Hide armor similar to this construction was also recorded for both the northern and southern bands of the Okanagan.¹⁶⁸ Plains armor probably agreed in style with the tailored armor of these groups peripheral to the Plains, especially since the people there were well versed in tailored shirt manufacture. Generally throughout the Plains and Southwest buckskin or leather, specifically indicated to be soft tanned, was cited more commonly than the rawhide so frequently named in the Far West.

The foregoing information on Plains and Southwestern hide armor was sufficient to suggest that the armor in those areas may have had a character of its own, at least in the historic period. Secoy felt that the construction of native armor in the Southwest and the Plains was altered upon Spanish contact, that afterwards it possessed two arm holes and was no longer open along the right side, and that this new type of armor became "an integral part of the Post-horse--Pre-gun military technique complex and spread with it widely

¹⁶⁷Kniffen, et. al., Walapai . . . , 1935, pp. 93-4.

¹⁶⁸Cline, et. al., loc. cit.

throughout the Plains."¹⁶⁹ However, there seemed to be no evidence which substantiated the single-fold--open-side armor in these areas, either before or after Spanish contact. Generally speaking, however, differences between the more western hide tunic and jacket armors and those of the Plains and Southwest can be explained partly by the fact that the western armor area straddled the boundary between a province that had tailored skin clothing and one that did not.

Some students have suggested that much or all of the native armor in the Southwest and the Plains was of post-Spanish age and a result of Spanish influences.¹⁷⁰ It is true that the Spanish brought hide armor, apparently of their design, to the Southwest;¹⁷¹ however, it seems clear also that a native hide armor tradition existed in the Southwest and Plains prior to Spanish influence.

As early as A.D. 1540 Melchior Diaz, while in the province of Sinaloa, Mexico, received an account from local natives of the country some 150 leagues north of Culiacan.

¹⁶⁹Secoy, loc. cit.

¹⁷⁰Worcester, The Spread of Spanish Horses . . . , 1944, p. 232.

¹⁷¹Curtis, F. S., Spanish Arms and Armor . . . , 1927, pp. 108, 111, 120. Hackett, Historical Documents . . . , 1923-37, p. 71.

throughout the island. The evidence which is presented in this report is that the fact is generally known that the western part of the island is a province and that the eastern part is not.

Some of the native error is that the Spanish and the English have been true that the English have their design, and that the English also that a number of the English Southwest and the English As early as 1717 the province of Spanish, and the natives of the island.

169
170
171
172
173
174
175
176
177
178
179
180
181
182
183
184
185
186
187
188
189
190
191
192
193
194
195
196
197
198
199
200

They said of the people there "that when they go to make war, they carry shields and wear leather jackets, which are made of cows' hide, colored".¹⁷² The descriptive context in which this statement occurred for the most part described Pueblo culture though for our purposes any confusion with non-Pueblo peoples would not destroy our case. This "colored" hide armor may be the first identification we have of the painted armor later cited by other sources for the Apache peoples of the Southwest and Southern Plains.¹⁷³

A technological evidence that Plains and Southwest hide armors were indigenous was presented by the known occurrence in these areas of the application of an adhesive with sand and gravel to fortify the hides.¹⁷⁴ The area under discussion was represented by the Cheyenne,¹⁷⁵ "Padouca,"¹⁷⁶ Navajo,¹⁷⁷ and Havasupai.¹⁷⁸ Probably it was more widely

¹⁷²Winship, The Coronado Expedition . . . , 1896, p. 548.

¹⁷³Dunn, Apache Relations in Texas, 1911, p. 222.
Gifford, Apache-Pueblo, 1940, pp. 32, 123.

¹⁷⁴See the occurrence of this technique in Table IV, p. 72.

¹⁷⁵Curtis, E.S., op. cit., Vol. 6, p. 157.

¹⁷⁶Fletcher and La Flesche, The Omaha Tribe, 1911, p. 79.

¹⁷⁷Franciscan Fathers, An Ethnologic Dictionary . . . , 1910, p. 458. Hill, loc. cit.

¹⁷⁸Spier, op. cit., p. 258.

TABLE IV

DISTRIBUTION OF THE USE OF AN ADHESIVE
WITH SAND OR GRAVEL TO FORTIFY ARMOR IN NORTH AMERICA^a

1. Tanaina (used on hide tunic armor)
2. Sekani (used on wooden shield)
3. Western Dene (used on hide tunic armor)
4. Carrier (used on hide tunic armor)
5. Chilcotin (used on hide tunic armor)
6. Shuswap (used on hide curtain shield and small hide shield)
7. Okanagan (used on hide shield)
8. Sanpoil (used on hide shield)
9. Tolowa (used on hide tunic armor)
10. Shoshoni: Lemhi R. (used on hide tunic armor)
11. Cheyenne (used on hide shirt armor)
12. "Padouca" (used on hide armor)
13. Navajo (used on hide shirt and tunic armor)^b
14. Havasupai (?) (probably used on hide armor)
15. Walapai (?) (probably used on hide armor)

^aNumerals correspond to those in Appendix F where they identify the source materials on which this distribution is based. This trait was probably much more common than these citations indicate.

^bLeather cuttings and trimmings are cited instead of sand or gravel.

CONVENT SCHOOL

WITH BAND OR BRASS BAND

1.	Tennant
2.	Burns
3.	Wasson
4.	Carroll
5.	Chapman
6.	Shields
7.	Shields
8.	Shields
9.	Shields
10.	Shields
11.	Shields
12.	Shields
13.	Shields
14.	Shields
15.	Shields

The above list of names is for the purpose of
 identifying the members of the band.
 The names are arranged in alphabetical order.
 The names are arranged in alphabetical order.
 The names are arranged in alphabetical order.

spread in these areas than these groups indicate. Furthermore, the use of this technique in the area farther west, from California to Alaska, well established it as an associate of the native armor tradition. Its use with Plains and Southwestern armors suggests that those armors were from a purely native tradition.

The elbow length sleeves, previously noted to have occurred variously in the Plains and Southwest, to a lesser degree offered the same sort of evidence for an indigenous position. Its use among the Nez Perce and especially the Thompson seemed to qualify it as an indigenous element beyond the limits of Spanish influence.

It seems quite probable, however, that at least some Spanish influence was absorbed by the indigenous armor tradition. La Salle visited the Hasinai village of Naouadiche in A.D. 1687 and only three years later, in A.D. 1690, Tonty arrived in the same village and reported that the natives were using horses, certain Spanish-like equestrian appurtenances, "and body covering of several skins, one over the other, as a protection from arrows. They arm the breasts of their horses with the same materials, a proof that they are not very far from the Spanish."¹⁷⁹ The

¹⁷⁹Kellogg, Memoir on La Salle's Discoveries . . ., 1917, p. 320.

position of the Hasinai at the extreme limit of hide armor in the southern Plains did inject a note of reason into Tonty's conclusion that there was Spanish influence present.

The horse armor mentioned above for the Hasinai has also been recorded for the Western Apache,¹⁸⁰ Plains Apache,¹⁸¹ the illusive "Padouca",¹⁸² the Shoshoni,¹⁸³ and possibly the Wichita.¹⁸³ Fletcher and La Flesche related a Ponca tradition concerning a meeting between the Ponca and "Padouca" at a time when the Ponca still had no horses but the "Padouca" did. It was said that both the Padouca horses and warriors were protected by armor "made of thick rawhide cut in round pieces and made to overlap like the scales of a fish. Over the surface was sand held on by glue."¹⁸⁵ This certainly

¹⁸⁰Thomas, Forgotten Frontiers, p. 216, citing Diary of Captain Martinez, 1780.

¹⁸¹Dunn, op. cit., p. 206, citing Aguayo; p. 222, citing Flores. Sjoberg, Lipan Apache Culture . . . , 1953, p. 90, citing Dennis and documentary sources.

¹⁸²Margry, . . . Mémoires et Documents . . . , 1879-88, Vol. 6, p. 312, citing La Harpe citing Du Tisne; p. 446, citing De Bourgmont. Fletcher and La Flesche, loc. cit. Hough, op. cit., p. 646, citing Du Pratz.

¹⁸³Coues, . . . Expedition . . . of Lewis and Clark, 1893, Vol. 2, p. 561.

¹⁸⁴Lewis, A., La Harpe's First Expedition . . . , 1924, p. 346, citing La Harpe; the wording is ambiguous and could mean either man or horse armor.

¹⁸⁵Fletcher and La Flesche, loc. cit.

position of the ...
in the ...
The ...
also ...
the ...
the ...
tradition ...
at a time when ...
it ...
were ...
pieces and ...
the ...

180 ...
181 ...
182 ...
Vol. 6, p. 212 ...
183 ...
Vol. 2, p. 201 ...
184 ...
p. 340 ...

was not in the usual tradition of native armor and could well have been inspired by Spanish forms, but the sand and glue component was probably derived from a pre-existing native tradition.

It was not within the scope of this study to deal intensively with the armors of the Mexican area. However, it is clear that the boundary between the hide tunic and jacket armor of western North America, and the cotton quilted armor of Middle America was not a sharply distinguished one. A sleeved hide tunic armor was cited for the Seri¹⁸⁶ and hide armor of uncertain type was recorded for the Aztec¹⁸⁷ and Mixtec.¹⁸⁸ Quilted cotton armor itself was attributed to the Pueblo area by Cushing,¹⁸⁹ but, since he gave no sources and did not elaborate his statement, the matter will not be discussed. Little is known concerning the precise style of the Mexican quilted cotton armor as there were no accurate descriptions. Bandelier concluded, on the basis of codex illustrations, that "The entire costume, from the neck to the knee, seems to be of one piece."¹⁹⁰ It quite

¹⁸⁶Kroeber, The Seri, 1931, p. 16.

¹⁸⁷Spier, op. cit., pp. 257-58.

¹⁸⁸Joyce, Mexican Archaeology, 1920, p. 126.

¹⁸⁹Cushing, Pueblo Indians . . . , 1896, p. 848.

¹⁹⁰Bandelier, On The Art of War . . . , 1877, n. 59, p. 110.

probably was a tailored tunic or jacket, possibly on the style of the Mexican huipil, and thus resembled the hide armor of the Southwest and Plains. If this were so, the break between Mexico and the Southwest would have depended on the choice of materials rather than on style.

Technically, some of the hide armors to the north fell nearly into the quilted class. Hill informed us that the Navajo tunic and jacket armor was made of two or more thicknesses of hide, between which a layer of adhesive and leather cuttings was added, and afterwards the whole was quilted to help it keep its shape.¹⁹¹ Mathew Cocking in A.D. 1772-73 encountered hide armor of multiple layers which was "quilted" among Blackfoot and saw among them a similar specimen that was attributed to the "Snake."¹⁹² It is not presumed that these quilted hide armors were direct derivatives of the Mexican quilted armor area. Multiple layer hide armor was cited often for all parts of the hide tunic and jacket armor distribution and the use of a quilting technique to keep the layers from separating would have been a logical sporadic occurrence.

¹⁹¹Hill, loc. cit.

¹⁹²Secoy, op. cit., p. 47, citing Cocking.

probably was in the first half of the century.

style of the text was in the

error of the text was in the

break between the text and the

on the choice of the text was in the

technical, however, the text was in the

nearly into the text was in the

have to turn to the text was in the

technical, however, the text was in the

technical, however, the text was in the

technical, however, the text was in the

A.D. 1172-73, however, the text was in the

which was "technical" however, the text was in the

similar, however, the text was in the

It is not possible to say whether the text was in the

derivatives of the text was in the

for this error was in the

text and the text was in the

technical to keep the text was in the

a logical error, however, the text was in the

1911, Jan. 1.

1922, Dec. 1.

Belt Armor.¹⁹³ Armor consisting of nothing more than a wide hide belt about the middle of the body was mentioned variously for areas of North America and fell into two regional clusters. One of the clusters centered in the southern Northwest Coast and adjacent Plateau and the other among the non-Pueblo groups of Arizona. There was sufficient continuity within each of the two areas, it is felt, to qualify this belt armor as a standardized type of hide armor. It does not seem likely, however, that the two general areas where it occurred were related. The shortage of armor information on the intervening southern California and Great Basin areas precludes little but speculation. At least neither of these belt armor areas was divorced from the distribution of standard tunic and jacket armors. It is conceivable that some of these belt armors, particularly in the Northwest, were but abbreviated versions of the standard jacket armors, lacking the arm gap and connection at the shoulder.

Curtain Shields.¹⁹⁴ One lesser category of North American hide armor deserves particular attention. This is the curtain shield, which is classed here as body armor

¹⁹³See the belt armor distribution in Table V, p. 78, and Figure 5, p. 79.

¹⁹⁴See the curtain shield distribution in Table VI, p. 80, and Figure 6, p. 81.

TABLE V

KEY TO FIGURE 5:
DISTRIBUTION OF WIDE BELT ARMOR IN NORTH AMERICA^a

1. Nootka ^b	9. Galice Creek
2. Okanagan	Sixes River
3. Sanpoil	10. Chetco
4. Coeur d'Alene	11. Yuki
5. Kutenai	12. Mohave
6. Klikitat (?)	13. Walapai
7. Tillamook	14. Maricopa ^c
8. Siuslaw	15. Papago

^aNumerals correspond to those in Figure 5; source materials on which this distribution is based are identified by the same numerals in Appendix G. Question mark (?) indicates questionable ascription--see Appendix G to clarify. All armor in this table is of hide except as otherwise qualified in footnotes.

^bAs well as a hide belt, a wide belt of twisted cedar bark is cited.

^cRope wrapped around belly; also a cotton blanket wrapped around body in folds and wound with a lariat.

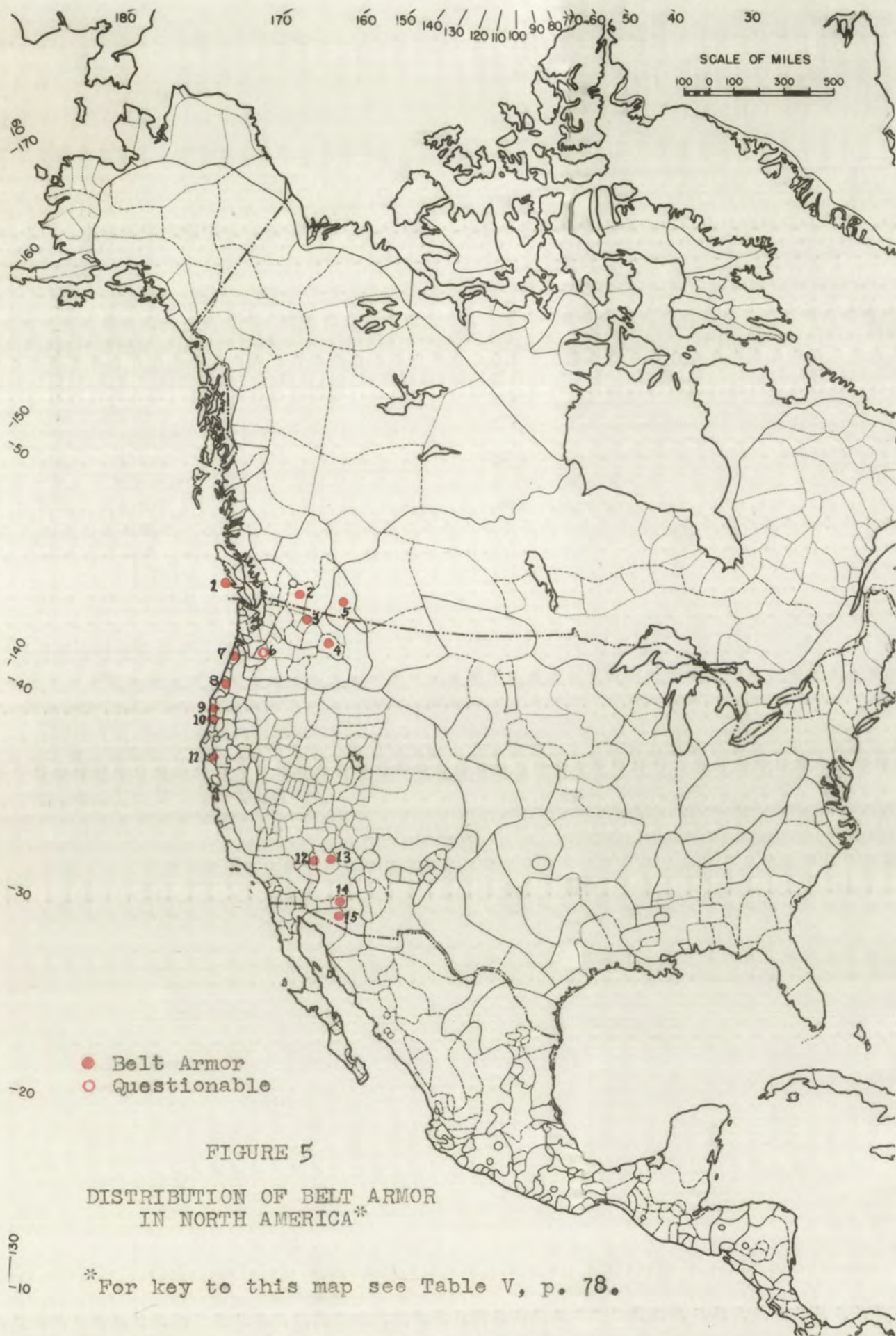


FIGURE 5
DISTRIBUTION OF BELT ARMOR
IN NORTH AMERICA*

*For key to this map see Table V, p. 78.

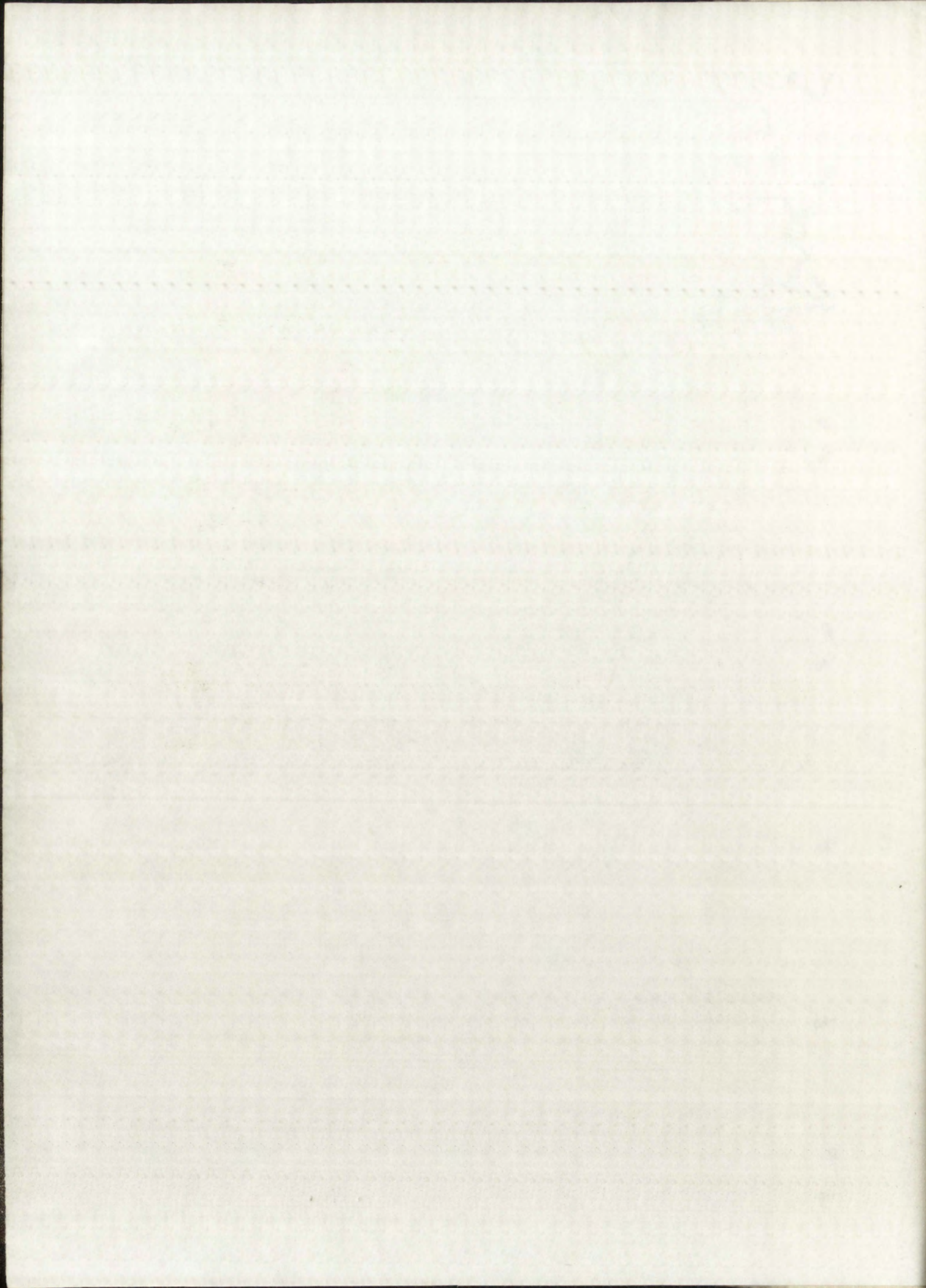


TABLE VI

KEY TO FIGURE 6:
DISTRIBUTION OF THE CURTAIN SHIELD IN NORTH AMERICA^a

1. Carrier (H)	14. Atsugewi (?) (H)
2. Shuswap (H) (R?)	15. Havasupai (H)
3. Thompson (H)	16. Walapai (H)
4. Kutenai (H)	17. Yavapai (H)
5. Coeur d'Alene (H)	18. Navajo (?) (R)
6. Modoc (H)	19. Apache: Northern Tonto (H)
7. Shasta (H)	20. Seri (H) (R)
8. Wintu (H)	21. Chicoratos (R)
9. Tolowa (H)	22. Central Mexico: "wild tribes" (R)
10. Karok (H)	23. Nahua (?) (R)
11. Yurok (H)	24. Chiapas (R?)
12. Hupa (H)	25. Maya (R?)
13. Wailaki (H)	

^aNumerals correspond to those in Figure 6; source materials on which this distribution is based are identified by the same numerals in Appendix H. (H) indicates hide construction; (R) indicates folding rod shield. Question mark (?) indicates questionable ascription--see Appendix H to clarify.

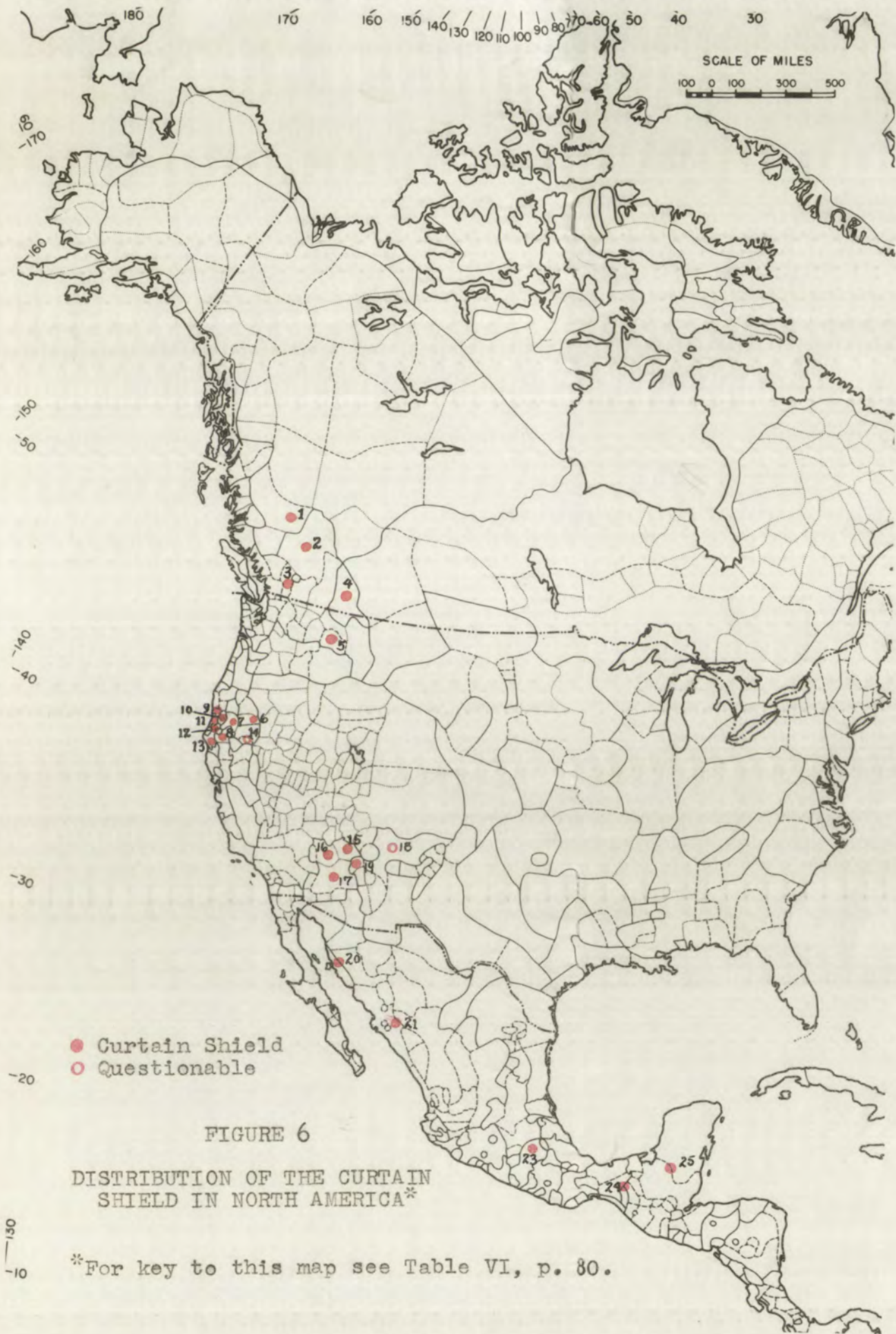
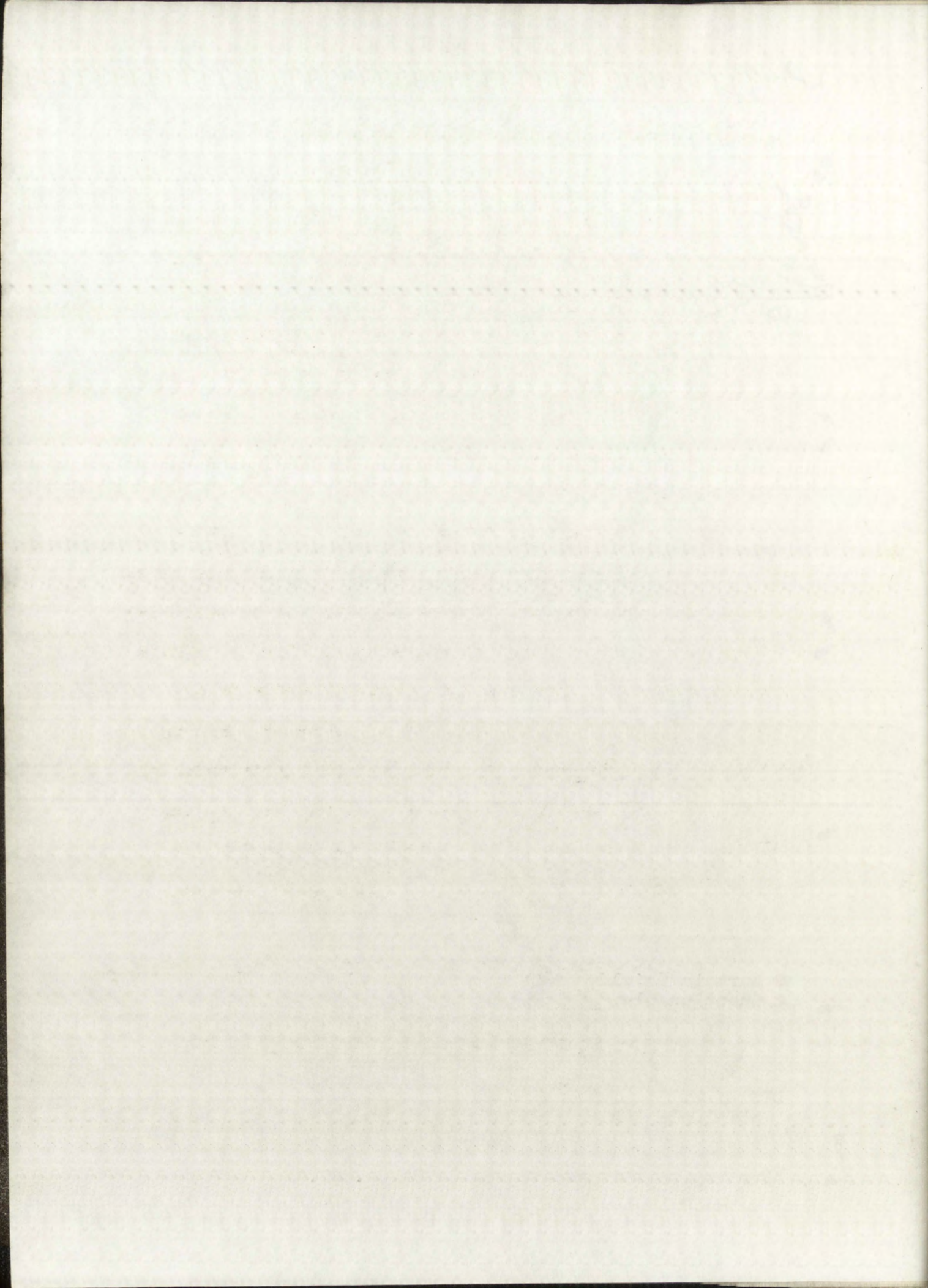


FIGURE 6

DISTRIBUTION OF THE CURTAIN SHIELD IN NORTH AMERICA*

*For key to this map see Table VI, p. 80.



because in some areas it was actually attached to the body at the neck and structurally resembled the wrap-around, open-side armor of the Far West.

Like belt armor, the curtain shield occurred in at least two widely separated areas. One included portions of the far Northwest from northern California to the southern Mackenzie area; the other included the Southwest and possibly portions of Mexico.

It was in the Northwest that the similarity between the curtain shield and the traditional hide tunic and jacket armor of that area was most apparent. For the northernmost of those tribes the curtain shield was described as a hide which was suspended upon the left shoulder and side by means of a thong around the neck of the warrior, leaving the right side uncovered. The hide was then maneuvered by the left arm and hand into whatever position the fighter desired. This type of curtain shield was cited for the Carrier,¹⁹⁵ Shuswap,¹⁹⁶ Thompson,¹⁹⁷ Kutenai,¹⁹⁸ Coeur

¹⁹⁵Teit, The Shuswap, 1909, pp. 538-39, citing Mackenzie.

¹⁹⁶Ibid., p. 538.

¹⁹⁷Teit, The Thompson Indians . . . , 1900, p. 266.

¹⁹⁸Ray, loc. cit.

because in some cases it is possible
at the back and the front of the
open-air sites of the 19th century
like the one at the back of the
least two which are situated in the
the far North-west of the site
Machenzies street; the 19th century
silly portions of the site
It was in the North-west of the site
the curtain which was the 19th century
error of that area was made in the
of those tribes which are situated in the
which was supposed to be the 19th century
means of a shop which was made in the
the right side of the site
the left side of the site
desired. This is a list of the 19th century
Carroll, 19th century, 19th century, 19th century

-
- 19th century, 19th century, 19th century
19th century, 19th century, 19th century
19th century, 19th century, 19th century
19th century, 19th century, 19th century

d'Alene,¹⁹⁹ and Shasta.²⁰⁰ The parallel between this curtain shield arrangement and the wrap-around, open-side hide tunic is evident, and it seems almost certain that some sort of historical relationship between the two existed in this area.

In the southern Northwest Coast, the curtain shield has been described as suspended by being held in the teeth; this method was listed by Driver for the Tolowa, Karok, Hupa, and Chilula.²⁰¹ This technique, the Yurok technique of hanging the shield from the helmet,²⁰² and the proximity of the previously cited Shasta use of the thong suspension indicated that uniformity on this point was lacking in this area.

Suspension by thong or from the teeth was not recorded for the curtain shields of the Southwest and Mexico. The Southwestern forms were usually suspended from a stick or a bow held out before the body as was cited for the Yavapai,²⁰³

¹⁹⁹Ibid.

²⁰⁰Holt, Shasta Ethnography, 1946, p. 313.

²⁰¹Driver, op. cit., p. 328.

²⁰²Ibid., p. 392.

²⁰³Gifford, Northeastern and Western Yavapai, 1936, p. 288.

199 Id.
 200 Holt, Alaska
 201 Holt, Alaska
 202 Holt, Alaska
 203 Holt, Alaska
 204 Holt, Alaska
 205 Holt, Alaska
 206 Holt, Alaska
 207 Holt, Alaska
 208 Holt, Alaska
 209 Holt, Alaska
 210 Holt, Alaska
 211 Holt, Alaska
 212 Holt, Alaska
 213 Holt, Alaska
 214 Holt, Alaska
 215 Holt, Alaska
 216 Holt, Alaska
 217 Holt, Alaska
 218 Holt, Alaska
 219 Holt, Alaska
 220 Holt, Alaska
 221 Holt, Alaska
 222 Holt, Alaska
 223 Holt, Alaska
 224 Holt, Alaska
 225 Holt, Alaska
 226 Holt, Alaska
 227 Holt, Alaska
 228 Holt, Alaska
 229 Holt, Alaska
 230 Holt, Alaska
 231 Holt, Alaska
 232 Holt, Alaska
 233 Holt, Alaska
 234 Holt, Alaska
 235 Holt, Alaska
 236 Holt, Alaska
 237 Holt, Alaska
 238 Holt, Alaska
 239 Holt, Alaska
 240 Holt, Alaska
 241 Holt, Alaska
 242 Holt, Alaska
 243 Holt, Alaska
 244 Holt, Alaska
 245 Holt, Alaska
 246 Holt, Alaska
 247 Holt, Alaska
 248 Holt, Alaska
 249 Holt, Alaska
 250 Holt, Alaska
 251 Holt, Alaska
 252 Holt, Alaska
 253 Holt, Alaska
 254 Holt, Alaska
 255 Holt, Alaska
 256 Holt, Alaska
 257 Holt, Alaska
 258 Holt, Alaska
 259 Holt, Alaska
 260 Holt, Alaska
 261 Holt, Alaska
 262 Holt, Alaska
 263 Holt, Alaska
 264 Holt, Alaska
 265 Holt, Alaska
 266 Holt, Alaska
 267 Holt, Alaska
 268 Holt, Alaska
 269 Holt, Alaska
 270 Holt, Alaska
 271 Holt, Alaska
 272 Holt, Alaska
 273 Holt, Alaska
 274 Holt, Alaska
 275 Holt, Alaska
 276 Holt, Alaska
 277 Holt, Alaska
 278 Holt, Alaska
 279 Holt, Alaska
 280 Holt, Alaska
 281 Holt, Alaska
 282 Holt, Alaska
 283 Holt, Alaska
 284 Holt, Alaska
 285 Holt, Alaska
 286 Holt, Alaska
 287 Holt, Alaska
 288 Holt, Alaska
 289 Holt, Alaska
 290 Holt, Alaska
 291 Holt, Alaska
 292 Holt, Alaska
 293 Holt, Alaska
 294 Holt, Alaska
 295 Holt, Alaska
 296 Holt, Alaska
 297 Holt, Alaska
 298 Holt, Alaska
 299 Holt, Alaska
 300 Holt, Alaska

Walapai,²⁰⁴ and Havasupai.²⁰⁵ No information on this point was provided for the curtain shields farther to the south in Mexico.

There was a break in the southern curtain shield area based on material used for construction. Most of the Mexican forms seemed to have been of twined rod construction rather than of hide. These rod curtain shields will be discussed in a later section on rod shields, but it is pertinent to indicate that there appeared to be an overlapping in western Mexico of the two varieties. For the Seri the hide curtain shield was cited²⁰⁶ as well as the rod variety.²⁰⁷

Helmets and Visors.²⁰⁸

Helmets were a common associate of both rod and hide armor throughout the whole length of the Northwest Coast and in immediately adjacent areas of the Mackenzie, Plateau, and California culture areas.

²⁰⁴Kniffen, et. al., op. cit., p. 93.

²⁰⁵Spier, op. cit., p. 258.

²⁰⁶McGee, The Seri Indians, 1898, p. 264; Kroeber, op. cit., pp. 16-17.

²⁰⁷Bancroft, The Native Races . . ., 1875-76, Vol. 1, p. 579.

²⁰⁸See the helmet and visor distribution in Table VII, pp. 85-86, and Figure 7, p. 87.

100

... in Mexico ... was provided ...

There was a ... based on ... can form ... rather than ... caused in ... ant to indicate ... western Mexico ... certain ...

Belmont and Wilson

Belmont was ... author ... and in ... and California ...

201
202
203
204
205
206
207
208
209
210
211
212
213
214
215
216
217
218
219
220
221
222
223
224
225
226
227
228
229
230
231
232
233
234
235
236
237
238
239
240
241
242
243
244
245
246
247
248
249
250
251
252
253
254
255
256
257
258
259
260
261
262
263
264
265
266
267
268
269
270
271
272
273
274
275
276
277
278
279
280
281
282
283
284
285
286
287
288
289
290
291
292
293
294
295
296
297
298
299
300
301
302
303
304
305
306
307
308
309
310
311
312
313
314
315
316
317
318
319
320
321
322
323
324
325
326
327
328
329
330
331
332
333
334
335
336
337
338
339
340
341
342
343
344
345
346
347
348
349
350
351
352
353
354
355
356
357
358
359
360
361
362
363
364
365
366
367
368
369
370
371
372
373
374
375
376
377
378
379
380
381
382
383
384
385
386
387
388
389
390
391
392
393
394
395
396
397
398
399
400
401
402
403
404
405
406
407
408
409
410
411
412
413
414
415
416
417
418
419
420
421
422
423
424
425
426
427
428
429
430
431
432
433
434
435
436
437
438
439
440
441
442
443
444
445
446
447
448
449
450
451
452
453
454
455
456
457
458
459
460
461
462
463
464
465
466
467
468
469
470
471
472
473
474
475
476
477
478
479
480
481
482
483
484
485
486
487
488
489
490
491
492
493
494
495
496
497
498
499
500
501
502
503
504
505
506
507
508
509
510
511
512
513
514
515
516
517
518
519
520
521
522
523
524
525
526
527
528
529
530
531
532
533
534
535
536
537
538
539
540
541
542
543
544
545
546
547
548
549
550
551
552
553
554
555
556
557
558
559
560
561
562
563
564
565
566
567
568
569
570
571
572
573
574
575
576
577
578
579
580
581
582
583
584
585
586
587
588
589
590
591
592
593
594
595
596
597
598
599
600
601
602
603
604
605
606
607
608
609
610
611
612
613
614
615
616
617
618
619
620
621
622
623
624
625
626
627
628
629
630
631
632
633
634
635
636
637
638
639
640
641
642
643
644
645
646
647
648
649
650
651
652
653
654
655
656
657
658
659
660
661
662
663
664
665
666
667
668
669
670
671
672
673
674
675
676
677
678
679
680
681
682
683
684
685
686
687
688
689
690
691
692
693
694
695
696
697
698
699
700
701
702
703
704
705
706
707
708
709
710
711
712
713
714
715
716
717
718
719
720
721
722
723
724
725
726
727
728
729
730
731
732
733
734
735
736
737
738
739
740
741
742
743
744
745
746
747
748
749
750
751
752
753
754
755
756
757
758
759
760
761
762
763
764
765
766
767
768
769
770
771
772
773
774
775
776
777
778
779
780
781
782
783
784
785
786
787
788
789
790
791
792
793
794
795
796
797
798
799
800
801
802
803
804
805
806
807
808
809
810
811
812
813
814
815
816
817
818
819
820
821
822
823
824
825
826
827
828
829
830
831
832
833
834
835
836
837
838
839
840
841
842
843
844
845
846
847
848
849
850
851
852
853
854
855
856
857
858
859
860
861
862
863
864
865
866
867
868
869
870
871
872
873
874
875
876
877
878
879
880
881
882
883
884
885
886
887
888
889
890
891
892
893
894
895
896
897
898
899
900
901
902
903
904
905
906
907
908
909
910
911
912
913
914
915
916
917
918
919
920
921
922
923
924
925
926
927
928
929
930
931
932
933
934
935
936
937
938
939
940
941
942
943
944
945
946
947
948
949
950
951
952
953
954
955
956
957
958
959
960
961
962
963
964
965
966
967
968
969
970
971
972
973
974
975
976
977
978
979
980
981
982
983
984
985
986
987
988
989
990
991
992
993
994
995
996
997
998
999
1000

CONFIDENTIAL

TABLE VII

KEY TO FIGURE 7:
DISTRIBUTION OF HELMETS AND VISORS IN NORTH AMERICA^a

1.	St. Lawrence Island (?)		(Hp)
2.	Tanaina: Kenai area		(Hh) ^b
3.	Tlingit: Lituya Bay	(Vw)	(H)
4.	Tlingit: Chilkat	(V)	(Hw)
5.	Tlingit: Sitka		(Hw)
6.	Tlingit: Sanyakwan	(V)	(Hw)
7.	Haida: Bucarelli Bay (Kaigani?)	(V)	(Hh?)
8.	Haida: Massett	(V)	(Hw)
9.	Haida: Skidegate		(Hw)
10.	Haida: Skedans	(V)	(Hw, h)
11.	Tsimshian proper	(V)	(Hh)
12.	Tsimshian: Hartley Bay	(V)	(Hh)
13.	Tsimshian: Gitksan	(V)	(Hh)
14.	Kwakiutl: Haisla		(Hh)
15.	Kwakiutl: Haihais	(V)	(Hw)
16.	Kwasiutl: Bella Bella (?)		(Hh)
17.	Kwakiutl: Kosquimo		(Hw)
18.	Salish: Klahuse		(Hh)
19.	Salish: Cowichan proper		(Hh)
20.	Tahltan		(Hw, h)
21.	Kaska: Upper Liard River	(V)	(Hh)
22.	Slave: Lower Liard River (?)		(Hh)
23.	Carrier: lower	(V) ^c	(Hh)
24.	Chilcotin		(Hh)
25.	Shuswap (?)		(H)
26.	Nez Perce (?)		(Hh)
27.	Klikitat		(Hh)
	Western Washington; Northwestern Oregon		(Hh)

(continued on next page)

^aNumerals correspond to those in Figure 7; source materials on which this distribution is based are identified by the same numerals in Appendix I. (H) indicates helmet; (V) indicates visor; (w) indicates wood; (h) indicates hide; (b) indicates basketry; (p) indicates plates. Question mark (?) indicates questionable ascription--see Appendix I to clarify.

^bNo separate helmet; hide tunic pulled over head to furnish it protection.

^cHelmet covers face, with holes for eyes.

DISTRIBUTION OF PLANTS AND ANIMALS

1.	Asplenium platyneuron
2.	Asplenium adnigrum
3.	Asplenium platyneuron
4.	Asplenium adnigrum
5.	Asplenium platyneuron
6.	Asplenium adnigrum
7.	Asplenium platyneuron
8.	Asplenium adnigrum
9.	Asplenium platyneuron
10.	Asplenium adnigrum
11.	Asplenium platyneuron
12.	Asplenium adnigrum
13.	Asplenium platyneuron
14.	Asplenium adnigrum
15.	Asplenium platyneuron
16.	Asplenium adnigrum
17.	Asplenium platyneuron
18.	Asplenium adnigrum
19.	Asplenium platyneuron
20.	Asplenium adnigrum
21.	Asplenium platyneuron
22.	Asplenium adnigrum
23.	Asplenium platyneuron
24.	Asplenium adnigrum
25.	Asplenium platyneuron
26.	Asplenium adnigrum
27.	Asplenium platyneuron

(continued on next page)

The following table shows the distribution of plants and animals in the various regions of the world. The table is arranged in columns, each representing a different region. The rows represent the different plants and animals. The numbers in the table indicate the number of specimens of each plant or animal found in each region.

The following table shows the distribution of plants and animals in the various regions of the world. The table is arranged in columns, each representing a different region. The rows represent the different plants and animals. The numbers in the table indicate the number of specimens of each plant or animal found in each region.

TABLE VII (continued)

28.	Chinook, Lower	(Hh, b)
29.	Sixes River	(Hh)
30.	Tututni	(Hh)
31.	Tolowa	(Hh)
	Chetco	(Hh)
32.	Takelma	(Hh)
33.	Yurok	(V) ^d (Hh)
34.	Hupa (?)	(Hh)
	Chilula	(Hh)
35.	Sinkyone	(Hh)
36.	Kato	(Hh) ^e
37.	Klamath (?)	(Hh)
38.	Modoc	(Hh)
39.	Shasta	(Hh)
40.	Achomawi	(Hh)
41.	Atsugewl	(Hh)
42.	Yana	(Hh)
43.	Wintu	(Hh)
44.	Paviotso, Pyramid L., Fallon and Lovelock	(Hh) ^e
45.	Cheyenne (?)	(Hh)
46.	Huron (?)	stick or rod helmet (?)
47.	Iroquois, Mohawk	skin and bark helmet
48.	Delaware	"sticks and wood" helmet
49.	Lower Savannah R.	(Hh)
50.	Seri (?)	(Hh)
51.	Cahita (?)	(H)
52.	Nahua (?)	(Hw)

^dHide curtain sometimes hung from helmet to chest, with holes for eyes.

^eNo separate helmet; hide tunic pulled over head to furnish it protection.

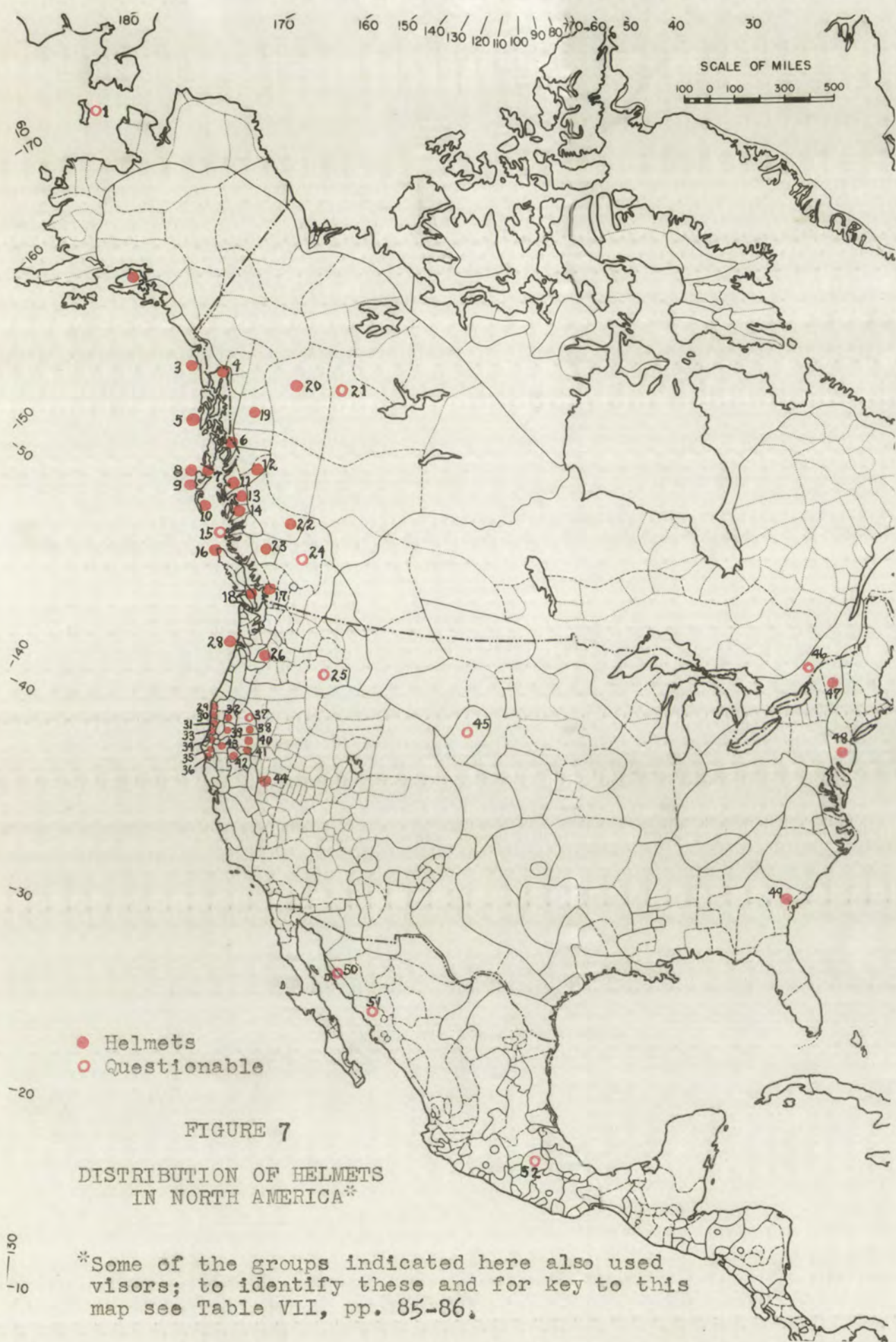
INDEX

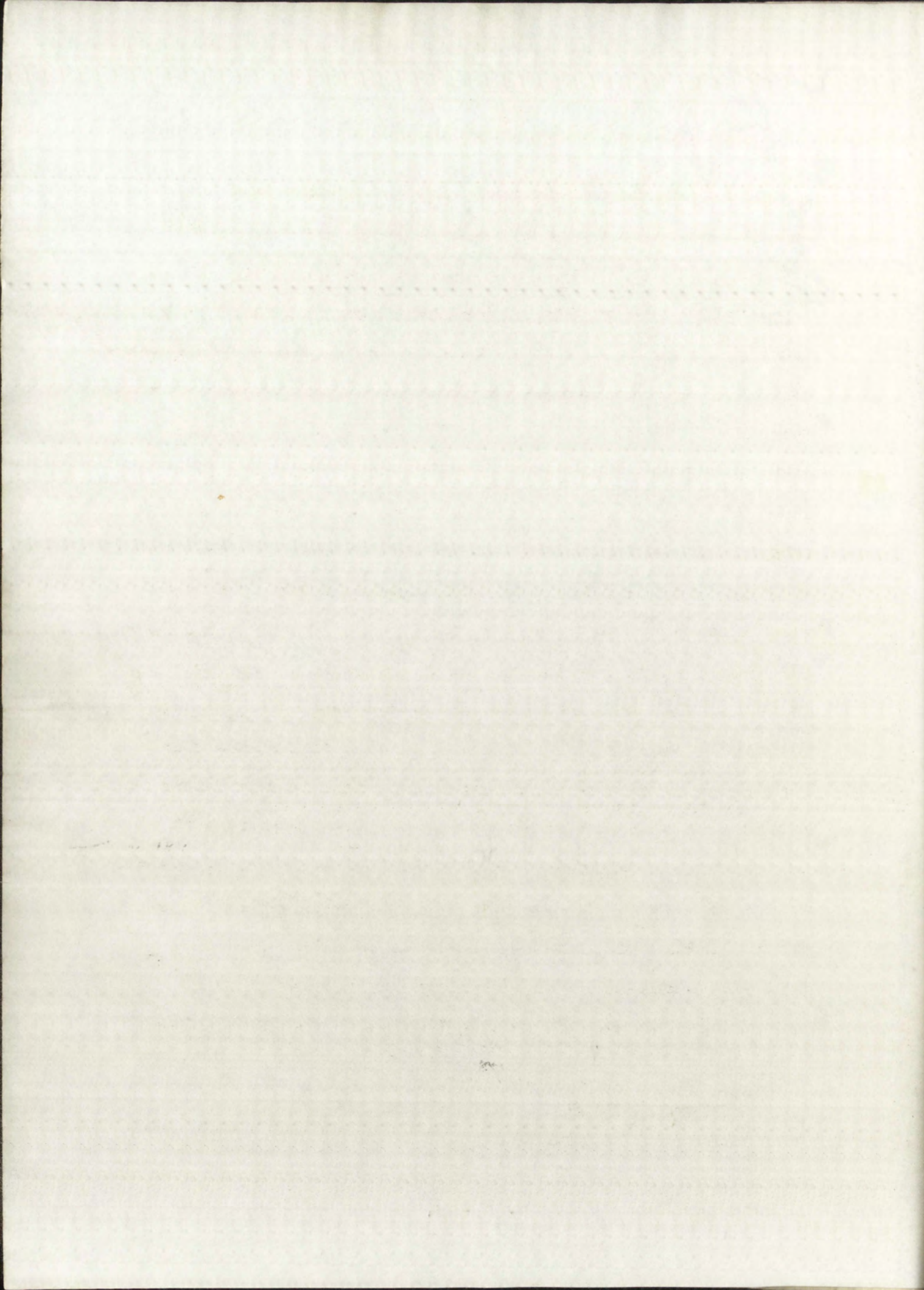
28.	Chlorophyll
29.	Chlorophyll
30.	Chlorophyll
31.	Chlorophyll
32.	Chlorophyll
33.	Chlorophyll
34.	Chlorophyll
35.	Chlorophyll
36.	Chlorophyll
37.	Chlorophyll
38.	Chlorophyll
39.	Chlorophyll
40.	Chlorophyll
41.	Chlorophyll
42.	Chlorophyll
43.	Chlorophyll
44.	Chlorophyll
45.	Chlorophyll
46.	Chlorophyll
47.	Chlorophyll
48.	Chlorophyll
49.	Chlorophyll
50.	Chlorophyll
51.	Chlorophyll
52.	Chlorophyll

holes for eyes.

No separate figures for the various species.

1900





The frequency of helmets in this northwestern area, in contrast to their relative absence in the rest of the western armor association, suggested that they may have been intimately associated with Northwest Coast culture. Armor descriptions for this area did not always clearly distinguish helmets from masks because of over-stress on the artistic qualities. Certainly the symbolic association that these helmets had for some groups overshadowed their utilitarian aspects. Boas said on this subject: "I am not quite certain if the decoration of armour and weapons is totemistic or symbolic. Remarkably many helmets represent the sea-lion, many daggers the bear, eagle, wolf, and raven, while I have not seen one that represents the killer whale, although it is one of the ornaments that are most frequently shown on totemistic designs."²⁰⁹ Probably such associations were restricted primarily to the area of wooden helmets which extended only as far south as the southern Kwakiutl.²¹⁰

In this distribution of helmets the numerous references to the war caps of the Pueblo and non-Pueblo Southwest were not included. There was little evidence that they were worn for practical rather than supernatural efficacy.

Visors, or war collars as they were sometimes called,

²⁰⁹Boas, Summary . . . , 1899, p. 680.

²¹⁰Drucker, Northwest Coast, 1950, pp. 187, 259.

were a phenomenon of the northern Northwest Coast as were wooden helmets, although there was no evidence they were usually or necessarily associated. The material from which these visors were constructed was usually wood; this material was cited for the Tlingit,²¹¹ and the single illustration of one of these visors which was located,²¹² a Tlingit specimen, seemed also to be of wood. Visors were commonly stated to have been held in the teeth, presumably for support.

Local Armors of Minimum Occurrence.²¹³

Armors that did not fit into the usual patterns of rod and hide construction occurred sporadically in western North America. Only one of these local armors showed any semblance of a type; this was the armor which Curtis described for the Kwakiutl as a sleeveless jacket "made by sewing tightly together ascending coils of braided, three-quarter-inch, cedar bark rope."²¹⁴ It was probably this same construction that was listed for the Nootka by Drucker as a

²¹¹Emmons, . . . La Perouse and the Tlingit, 1911, p. 297.

²¹²Niblack, op. cit., Pl. 14, citing Lisiansky.

²¹³See the occurrence of local armors not of the standard rod or hide construction in Table VIII, p. 90.

²¹⁴Curtis, E. S., op. cit., Vol. 10, p. 18.

were a phenomenon of the
wooden industry, although
usually of considerable
these views were
was cited for the
of one of these views
specimens, never
stated to have been
port.

Local Animals of the

Animals that the
and hide construction
American. Only one of
distance of a
for the
slightly
inch, cedar bark
stratification that was

-
- 211
p. 297.
212
213
214
215
216
217
218
219
220
221
222
223
224
225
226
227
228
229
230
231
232
233
234
235
236
237
238
239
240
241
242
243
244
245
246
247
248
249
250
251
252
253
254
255
256
257
258
259
260
261
262
263
264
265
266
267
268
269
270
271
272
273
274
275
276
277
278
279
280
281
282
283
284
285
286
287
288
289
290
291
292
293
294
295
296
297
298
299
300

TABLE VIII

LOCAL ARMORS IN NORTH AMERICA
NOT OF THE STANDARD ROD OR HIDE CONSTRUCTION^a

- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1. Kwakiutl | Jacket of ascending coils of cedar bark rope sewn together. |
| 2. Nootka: Muchalat | Heavy, closely twined cedar bark used for armor. |
| 3. Nootka: Clayoquot | "Twined cedarbark jacket (heavy)." |
| 4. Pomo, Central | "Armor of twined (?) soaproot fiber." |
| 5. Yellowknife | "Plates of native copper were buckled together and used as armour." |
| 6. Cree: Eastern | "Armor was made of skin drawn over wood, thick bark or hard leather which rested next to the skin of the wearer. The outside was inflated by blowing, making a kind of pneumatic cushion." |
| 7. Northern
Saulteaux | (statement for Eastern Cree above pertains.) |
| 8. Penobscot | Birch bark kilt or skirt used as armor. |
| 9. Iroquois: Mohawk | Armor of "sea horse skinnies and barks of trees." |
| 10. Yavapai | Mescal slab armor (see p. 91 for description.) |
| 11. Pueblos | Cuirasses of "padded cotton and yucca." |

^aNumerals correspond to those in Appendix J where they identify the sources for these citations.

NOT ON THE LIST OF

1. Kachibati
2. Kachibati
3. Kachibati
4. Kachibati
5. Kachibati
6. Kachibati
7. Kachibati
8. Kachibati
9. Kachibati
10. Kachibati
11. Kachibati

they identify the same as

jacket of heavy, closely twined cedar bark.²¹⁵

Barrett recorded that the Pomo sometimes made a whole suit of armor "of soaproot fiber attached to netting."²¹⁶ It is probable that the armor "of twined (?) soaproot fiber" that Gifford and Kroeber recorded for the Pomo²¹⁷ was of this type.

Gifford reported that the southeastern Yavapai created armor from mescal which had been cooked, moulded, and dried into plates. Two of these plates were suspended by shoulder thongs, one at the front and one at the back of the body. The one in the rear was longer in order to extend upward to protect the head. A rope around the middle held them tight against the body. These plates of mescal apparently were of the same type which were prepared for food.²¹⁸ This style of armor was not paralleled by any other group.

The Problem of Asiatic Affinities.

It has been shown that if there was any affinity between the armors of western North America and those of Asia,

²¹⁵Drucker, op. cit., p. 187. Drucker, Nootkan Tribes, 1951, p. 335.

²¹⁶Barrett, Material Aspects of Pomo Culture . . . , 1952, p. 191.

²¹⁷Gifford and Kroeber, Pomo, 1937, p. 142.

²¹⁸Gifford, . . . Southeastern Yavapai, 1932, p. 225.

the Alaskan version of Asiatic plate armor was not the intermediary. An investigation of the perimeter of North-east Asia for armors more obviously similar to the New World forms was conducted with little in the way of conclusive results.

Hide armor was represented in Siberia in the form of hoop armor. This armor was constructed of wide bands of hide formed into partially closed hoops which were then attached one above the other. The hoops were graduated in size and the finished product appeared as a conical gown, worn below the arms, and was capable of being telescoped. They were worn with a high, winged shield suspended on the back to protect the rear and sides of the head and shoulders. It is quite apparent that this type of armor was conceptually akin to the plate armors; the bands or rings of hide take the place of bands of plates; the right side was left open as with plate armor tunics in that area, and the winged back-shield was identical with the same feature. Furthermore, plate armor itself was familiar to all groups known to have used this hoop armor. Hide hoop armor of the sort described above was noted for the Chukchee²¹⁹ and Kamchadal.²²⁰

²¹⁹Hough, op. cit., p. 635; Pl. 4-5.

²²⁰Krasheninnikov, Histoire et Description du Kamtchatka, 1770, Vol. 1, p. 88.

It was also possibly represented for St. Lawrence Island by the find of a figurine depicting a warrior in armor which resembled the hoop type.²²¹ Among the Kamchadal mats, presumably woven, were specified as an alternative material for the hoops.²²²

The Kamchadal assemblage of armor was noteworthy by virtue of its proximity to the Aleutian Island chain. Not only were they familiar with plate armor²²³ and the mat or hide hoop armor mentioned above but they may have sometimes combined the two. Chard cited a specimen in the Vladivostok museum, alleged to be Kamchadal armor, which consisted of wooden plates covered with leather to surround the upper body and an attached skirt of eight leather hoops. A horn plate helmet was included in the ensemble.²²⁴ There was nothing here that resembled the Aleut rod armor.

Southward, among the Ainu, several contrasting armors appeared. On the island of Kunashir in the Kuriles "wooden

²²¹Cadzow, Objectes from St. Lawrence Island, 1925, Fig. 61, pp. 123, 124.

²²²Krasheninnikov, loc. cit. This is the mat armor which Hough attributed to the Kamchadal, citing Grieve; Grieve was the editor of an abridged English edition of Krasheninnikov.

²²³Chard, Kamchadal Culture . . ., 1953, p. 108.

²²⁴Ibid., p. 107.

slat armor" was reported in A.D. 1777 according to Berg.²²⁵ Hieronymus de Angelis in A.D. 1622 described the Ainu armor of Sakhalin as composed of "small planks fastened together."²²⁶ It is quite possible that this last description pertained to plate armor, for Rinsō encountered iron plate armor in use among the "Sumerenkuru" (Gilyak) of Sakhalin on his expedition of 1807-09; they obtained it in trade from the "Korutekke" (Goldi) of Manchuria.²²⁷ Bachelor, however, said that the Ainu of Sakhalin used for armor "coats made of cords and nets covered thickly with adhesive mud or clay well dried in the sun. Sometimes the foundation consisted of salmon skin".²²⁸ He had also heard of "coats covered with stones tied on with string used as armour."²²⁹ In an earlier publication Bachelor reported that the Ainu, without specifying which group, wore armor of "a very light kind, consisting entirely of leather. Some of them wore Japanese armour, which they took from the dead in warfare."²³⁰ Of all these

²²⁵Ibid., p. 108, citing Berg.

²²⁶Siebold, Geographical and Ethnographical Elucidations . . . , 1859, p. 99, citing Witsen.

²²⁷Harrison, Kita Yezo Zuzetsu . . . , 1955, p. 114.

²²⁸Bachelor, Ainu Life and Lore, [1927?] , p. 33.

²²⁹Ibid.

²³⁰Bachelor, The Ainu of Japan, 1892, p. 287.

Ainu armors only the "slat" and "plank" citations suggested anything directly similar to New World armors. However, due to the lack of more complete descriptions and the proximity of the Ainu to the plate armor area, it is not likely that these armors resembled the slat armor of western North America. Seeming resemblances were the result of the authors' choice of descriptive terms.

In conclusion it can be stated that there were at least two broad conceptual parallels apparent between the armors of western North America and Northeast Asia. One parallel was the occurrence in both areas of armors which were wrapped around the left side of the body, with the right side open. This technique was observed in the hide tunics of western America and in both the plate armor and hide hoop armor of Siberia. The other parallel was the customary use in both areas of vertically placed long elements fastened together, which was the case for New World rod and slat armors and Old World plate armor. It does seem likely that a historical relationship existed, whose more detailed evidence has been erased by the changing configuration of culture elements in the North Pacific area.

... to the fact that the ...
of the ...
these ...
last ...
choice of ...
In conclusion ...
two bread ...
of western ...
was ...
wrapped around ...
side ...
of western ...
heavy ...
see in both ...
together ...
enough and ...
a historical ...
denote ...
two elements ...

IV. ROD ARMOR IN EASTERN NORTH AMERICA¹

Eastern armor was much more poorly documented than that of the West, both in terms of numbers of citations and groups represented and in the completeness of the descriptions. As was indicated in the introduction, it is probable that the eastern armor distributions as presented herein are attenuated representations of the actual distributions. This was attributed to the disuse of armor consequent to the appearance of firearms. Possibly this preceded direct contact with the Europeans themselves. As early as 1721 Charlevoix, who was resident in French Canada, attributed the abandonment of native armor to its inability to protect against firearms.²

The only armor that can be identified as a broad and standard type for the East is twined rod armor. It can be identified positively for the Algonquin, Huron, Iroquois, and Roanoke, and only implied for a few other groups. Speaking very generally, the information available suggested a distribution roughly triangular in outline, with its apex somewhere on the Atlantic coast of the Southeast and its base running from a point just north of Lake Huron eastward

¹See the rod armor distribution in Table I, p. 14, and Figure 1, p. 15.

²Charlevoix, Journal . . ., 1723, Vol. 1, p. 320.

to the St. Lawrence Valley. Despite the shortcomings of the information obtained on eastern rod armor, it was believed that a comparison between it and the rod armor tradition of the West should be attempted in order to illuminate their affinities or lack of affinities.

Detailed descriptive material on eastern rod armor was so scarce that its character and construction was difficult to determine. Items upon which data was available included pieces for the front of the upper body, braces, greaves, and possibly helmets.

There can be no doubt that rods were used in eastern armor. The sources variously refer to them by the terms rods, sticks, and reed stems. Wood was the only material which was noted for rod construction with the one exception of "reed-stems" as well as "wood" cited for the natives of New France.³

Twining the rods together with some sort of cordage was apparently the usual method employed in eastern armors. It was indicated by the use of the various words and phrases: woven, wickered, laced and plaited, stitched and interlaced, sewn and interlaced, and woven and enlaced. There was nothing to suggest that there was any technique in use

³Thwaites, The Jesuit Relations . . ., 1896-1900, Vol. 13, p. 272, citing Lafitau.

other than twining, unless some of the above phrases could be so interpreted.

Few cordage materials for attaching the rods were recorded. Hide was named for the natives of French Canada,⁴ cotton for the Iroquois at Lake Champlain⁵ (probably a wrong identification,) and nettles for the Huron and Iroquois.⁶ A point so poorly documented as this, for both East and West, hardly warranted a comparison of the two areas.

One of the principal sources on the form of eastern rod armor was an illustration published by Champlain.⁷ It showed a warrior wearing a waist length breast piece hung by two straps from the shoulders; it did not appear to encompass the whole body but was nothing more than an elaborate breast plate. It seemed to be constructed of vertically placed rods or laths which were laced or twined together with cordage. A kilt or skirt of apparently the same construction reached from the waist to the knees and passed

⁴Ibid.

⁵Champlain, The Voyages to the Great River St. Lawrence . . ., 1925, pp. 99-100. Flannery, An Analysis of Coastal Algonquian Culture, 1939, p. 76. Lescarbot, The History of New France, 1607-14, Vol. 3, p. 13.

⁶Flannery, op. cit., pp. 75-6, citing Boucher.

⁷Champlain, Voyages and Discoveries . . ., 1929, Pl. 6, fig. E.

entirely around the body. Greaves and braces were indicated, and appeared to be of the same construction as the breast piece. The back of the upper body was protected by a large shield fixed to the shoulders. This shield reached from the back of the head to the waist and had two lateral flaps which may have been hinged to the center and main portion of the shield. It appeared to be fashioned from vertical slats or planks. Champlain's text related to the "Attigouautan tribe," a Huron group occupying the peninsula between Georgian Bay and Lake Huron.⁸ Three other figures which appeared in the same plate with the armored warrior were identified in the text as Huron, although no textual reference was made to the armor figure itself.

There was no reason to doubt the authenticity of Champlain's illustration since other authors confirmed rod construction and twining. Furthermore, the style of armor depicted by Champlain was also corroborated by other sources.

Eastern armors were most commonly described in the early historical sources as corselets, as Vimont did for the Algonquin,⁹ or cuirasses, as Sagard recorded for the Huron,¹⁰

⁸Ibid., pp. 121-22.

⁹Vimont, Relation . . . , 1898, Vol. 24, p. 205.

¹⁰Sagard, The Long Journey . . . , 1939, p. 154.

and Lafitau for the Huron and Iroquois.¹¹ Both corselet and cuirass in Sixteenth and Seventeenth Century usage referred to upper body armor composed of a combination of a breastplate and separate back piece. Sometimes these terms were actually qualified by the authors to indicate the breastplate only. The Oviedo account of the De Soto expedition in the year 1540 reported "breastplates like corselets" at Talimeco on the lower Savannah River,¹² thus identifying corselets with breastplates. Charlevoix's reference to the armor of the natives of French Canada as "a sort of cuirass, or breast plate" implied the same sort of identification.¹³ Sagard received a description of the "armor and cuirass" of the Huron which was worn "on their back and legs and other parts of the body"¹⁴ which suggests that the back was protected by a different device than that which shielded the front of the body. The back armor mentioned by him may have been similar to the large shield illustrated by Champlain.

¹¹Thwaites, op. cit., Vol. 13, p. 272, citing Lafitau. Flannery, op. cit., p. 76, citing Potherie. Charlevoix, loc. cit.

¹²Oviedo of Valdes, A Narrative of De Soto's Expedition . . ., 1904, p. 101.

¹³Charlevoix, loc. cit.

¹⁴Sagard, loc. cit.

The only statement which indicated that a full jacket might have been used in the East was from Lescarbot. In The History of New France he stated of the Iroquois defeated by Champlain at Lake Champlain that "neither their coats of woven cotton nor the shields of their captains had protected them from so sudden a death."¹⁵ This appeared to be Lescarbot's own paraphrase of the situation from other accounts and suggested a lack of concern for precise adherence to original descriptions. The other sources for the battle consulted did not use the word coat or suggest its use as valid, nor did they describe the armor as being made only of woven cotton.

Other than lexical suggestions were found which indicated that the documentary sources for eastern rod armor were probably referring, among other parts, to separate breast pieces. The wearing of breast plates for ornament was common in eastern North America down to the close of the aboriginal era. Some sources indicated that this breast plate tradition also included the concept of wartime protection. In the Sloan Collection of the British Museum, which was brought to England before 1753, there was a New England item cataloged "An Indian breast plate which they wear when they go to war or at any great feast--made of shells out of the

¹⁵Lescarbot, loc. cit.

100

100

The only other source of information
which have been found in the
The History of the
by Chapman & Co. Ltd.
seven cotton
than from the
cotton's own
and suggested a
original description
connected did not
valid, though
of woven cotton.
Other than
bed that the
probably referred
alices. The
in eastern
etc. -
also included
Shen Collection
to England
logged
to war on

100

up-country fresh water lakes."¹⁶ In 1584 Amadas and Barlowe visited the natives of Roanoke Island and in their account, as presented by Raleigh, said: "they use wooden breast plates for their defense."¹⁷ Speaking of the same group Amadas and Barlowe related how one of them had perforated and hung about his neck a tin plate, given to him by the Englishmen, "making signes that it would defende him against his enemies arrowes."¹⁸ In this context it should be remembered that the Roanoke were one of the groups which were credited with rod armor.¹⁹ A Mahican informant in 1804 said of former Mahican that "in battle they used shields made of green hide, or breast plate."²⁰ For the Timucua Indians, Le Moyne noted circular metal plates which they "were accustomed to wear to protect the back and breast in war." However Swanton questioned whether such a use was intentional or accidental.²¹

¹⁶Bushnell, The Sloane Collection . . . , 1906, p. 674.

¹⁷Raleigh, The First Voyage . . . , 1927, p. 130.

¹⁸Ibid., p. 125.

¹⁹Hariot, A Brief and True Report . . . , 1903, opposite Signature E2.

²⁰Anonymous, Extract from an Indian History, 1804, p. 102.

²¹Swanton, The Indians of the Southeastern United States, 1946, p. 589.

Besides breast plates, some of the other features of the armor illustrated by Champlain were noted elsewhere in the literature for the Northeast (see Table VII), which suggested an over-all validity for the illustration. Full body armor was recorded for the Huron by Lalemant, who stated it "covers a man from his head to his feet."²² Sagard, also speaking of the Huron and referring specifically to their rod armor, said that it was worn "on their back and legs and other parts of the body."²³ Cartier heard that the Agojuda, apparently an Algonquin group, used rod armor and were "armed to the teeth,"²⁴ although this may be only a figure of speech. Braces, armor for the thighs and arms, were noted for the Iroquois and Huron by Lafitau, who identified them as being constructed from the same materials as their twined rod cuirasses.²⁵ Charlevoix, speaking of the Indians of Canada and of the Iroquois more specifically, said in 1721 that "They had even formerly a kind of mail

²²Lalemant, Relation of 1642, 1898, Vol. 23, p. 155.

²³Sagard, loc. cit.

²⁴Cartier, A Shorte and Brief Narration . . ., 1928, p. 171. Flannery, op. cit., p. 76, using another, though possibly less authoritative, Cartier source renders this as "armed even to the fingers ends."

²⁵Thwaites, loc. cit.

... in the literature ... suggested an ... body of ... it "covers ... speaking of ... red ... and other ... Agoston, ... were " ... figure of ... were ... tified ... as their ... the Indians of ... said in 1791 ...

SS ...
SS ...
SS ...
SS ...
SS ...
SS ...
SS ...
SS ...

for the arms and thighs."²⁶ Braces made of birch bark, as well as a skirt or kilt of the same material, were reported used ceremonially by the historic Penobscot, who said such a costume was used anciently for armor.²⁷

Helmets of various materials were recorded for the Iroquois,²⁸ the Delaware,²⁹ and the lower Savannah River.³⁰ The Delaware helmet was described by Lindström as being constructed of "hard wooden pins and strong wood" or "sticks and wood."³¹ If this was rod construction, it contrasts the East with the West, for no citation for a rod helmet was found for any group in the western rod armor area. There appeared to be a helmet of rod construction on the Huron warrior in Champlain's illustration.

In summary, it appears that the eastern armor tradition did not customarily make use of the true jacket form. Armor for the torso was composed of a separate front or breast piece, and additional pieces for the other parts of the body

²⁶Charlevoix, loc. cit.

²⁷Speck, Penobscot Man . . ., 1940, p. 147.

²⁸Wood, New Englands Prospect, 1898, p. 61.

²⁹Lindström, Geographia Americanae, 1925, p. 197, p. 206.

³⁰Oviedo y Valdes, loc. cit.

³¹Lindström, op. cit., pp. 197, 206.

were sometimes added to complement this. Western armors, it was noted, also sometimes incorporated additional pieces such as greaves and helmets to complement the jacket armor, but the latter piece in itself was traditionally a body-encircling jacket-type of garment. Such a distinction between eastern and western armors warranted classifying them as two different types, even if not in two separate traditions. But other information seemed to validate a separate tradition stand.

The geographical gap between the two distributions was a vast one. The easternmost of the western groups noted to have used rod armor was the Flathead; the westernmost of the eastern groups known to have possessed it was the Huron or Algonquin. Between these areas absolutely no reference was found which could be construed to refer to rod armor. Such a great geographical hiatus does not suggest a common origin for the use of such armor between East and West. Such a conclusion, however, must properly be tempered by the knowledge that eastern rod armor appeared to have disappeared almost in the initial contact period, coincident with the spread of warfare with firearms. Firearms preceded the actual European frontier and may have caused the abandonment of rod armor before European observers reached the scene in numbers. Yet, the few early explorers who did venture west of the eastern Great Lakes during the Seventeenth

were sometimes... it was noted... such as... but the latter... closing... between eastern... as two different... But other information... stand.

The geographical... a vast one. The... have used... the eastern... or Algonquin... was found... Such a great... origin for the... Such a conclusion... the knowledge... appeared... with the spread... the actual... element of... across in numbers... ture west of the...

Century should have observed rod armor if it were there.

One very important distinction can be made between the two rod armor areas. In the West slat armor was associated with rod armor as a closely related, secondary variation. It was especially significant that this variation pertained to the whole of the western range and not to one region alone. Nowhere in eastern North America was it possible to demonstrate the use of any armor which could be called slat armor, either as a variation of eastern rod armor, or as a separate entity in itself. If the two rod armor areas were historically related, this lack of a slat variation would be difficult to explain. In view of this it can be inferred that eastern rod armor was too significantly different in concept, materially or historically or both, from the western forms to allow such a variation.

Unfortunately, the information was not precise enough to ascertain if the easternmost of the western rod armors and the westernmost of the eastern forms were materially peripheral to their own areas. The two opposing peripheries apparently did not grade toward each other. Skinner, in his fieldwork of 1908-09, reported that among the eastern Cree and northern Salteaux armor was formerly composed of wood, bark, or hard leather covered by inflated hide.³²

³²Skinner, Notes on the Eastern Cree and Northern Salteaux, 1912, p. 78.

Germany should have been...
One very important...
...the two...
...with...
It was...
to the...
alone...
...the...
...either...
...separate...
...historically...
...he...
...that...
...concept...
...form...
...Un...
...to...
...and...
...peripheral...
...ies...
...in his...
...Gree...
...wood,...

This seemed to be an aberrant type and indeed questionable, but the bark component suggested a relationship with the Northeast where bark armors were reported for the Mohawk,³³ and Penobscot.³⁴ Presumably the wood or hard leather of the Cree-Salteaux armor was used in forms analogous to the physical properties of bark. Even this use of hide resembled the shields "'of osier or of bark, covered with one or more skins stretched across'" which were noted for the Iroquois by Lafitau.³⁵

Not only can no rod armor be ascribed to the people between the eastern and western rod armor areas, but it has been demonstrated that the only armor found there, hide armor, appeared to be peripheral to the greater hide armor distribution of the West, or to be of Spanish derivation. The absence of hide armor in the East reinforced the contention that the generalized armor traditions of the two areas, including their respective rod armors, were separate generic entities.

In the foregoing discussion several reasons were presented to show that eastern rod armor warranted a position as a separate historical tradition from that of the rod

³³Wood, New Englands Prospect . . . , 1898, p. 61.

³⁴Speck, loc. cit.

³⁵Thwaites, op. cit., Vol. 13, p. 272.

armor of the West. This conclusion was implicit in a group of facts taken in total. In summary, these facts were as follows. Eastern forms of rod armor showed no evidence of following the western style of a body-encircling, jacket type of garment, and instead, evidenced a strong possibility of having centered on a separate front piece, complemented by additional pieces for other parts of the body. No intervening rod or slat armors could be found to fill the vast geographical gap existing between the eastern and western rod armor distributions. Eastern rod armor showed no known slat variation, while this latter form was coexistent with rod armor in the West. There was no evidence on the facing peripheries of the two distributions to indicate a grading in type from one area to the other. And, finally, in the intervening gap the hide armor which occurred there indicated a strong relationship to the greater hide armor distribution to the west.

V. ROD SHIELDS IN NORTH AMERICA¹

To illuminate the problem of two apparently separate armor traditions, each based on the concept of rod twining, it would be valuable to know the geographical distribution of the technique of rod twining itself, whether used for implements of war or not. As an effort in this direction the present study has attempted to outline the distribution of rod twining used in the manufacture of shields, feeling that they, more than any other manufacture, would bear a material as well as a conceptual relationship to armor.

Several sources indicated the use of twined rod shields in the East, both in the area of rod body armor and outside of it. Lafitau spoke of shields of "osier" for the Iroquois.² John Smith referred to the use of twined rod shields by the "Massawomek" (Susquehanna?), saying that their "Targets . . . were made of little small sticks woven betwixt strings of their hemp and silke grasse, as in our Cloth."³ These citations associated rod shields directly with the Northeast rod armor distribution. According to the Garcilaso

¹See the rod shield distribution in Table IX, p. 110, and Figure 8, p. 111.

²Thwaites, The Jesuit Relations . . . , 1896-1900, Vol. 13, p. 272.

³Smith, The General Historie . . . , 1907, Vol. 1, p. 129.

TABLE IX

KEY TO FIGURE 8:
DISTRIBUTION OF ROD SHIELDS IN NORTH AMERICA^a

1. Iroquois	11. Serid ^d
2. "Massawomek" (Susquehanna?)	12. Chicoratos ^d
3. Lower Savannah River	13. Jalisco
4. Lower Mississippi River	14. Central Mexico: "wild tribes" ^d
5. Western Dene	15. Nahua ^e
6. Carrier	16. Chiapas (?) ^d
7. Shuswap ^b	17. Maya ^f
8. Okanagan: southern	18. Nicaragua
9. Achomawi	
10. Navajo (?) ^c	

^aNumerals correspond to those in Figure 8; source materials on which this distribution is based are identified by the same numerals in Appendix K. Question mark (?) indicates questionable ascription--see Appendix K to clarify.

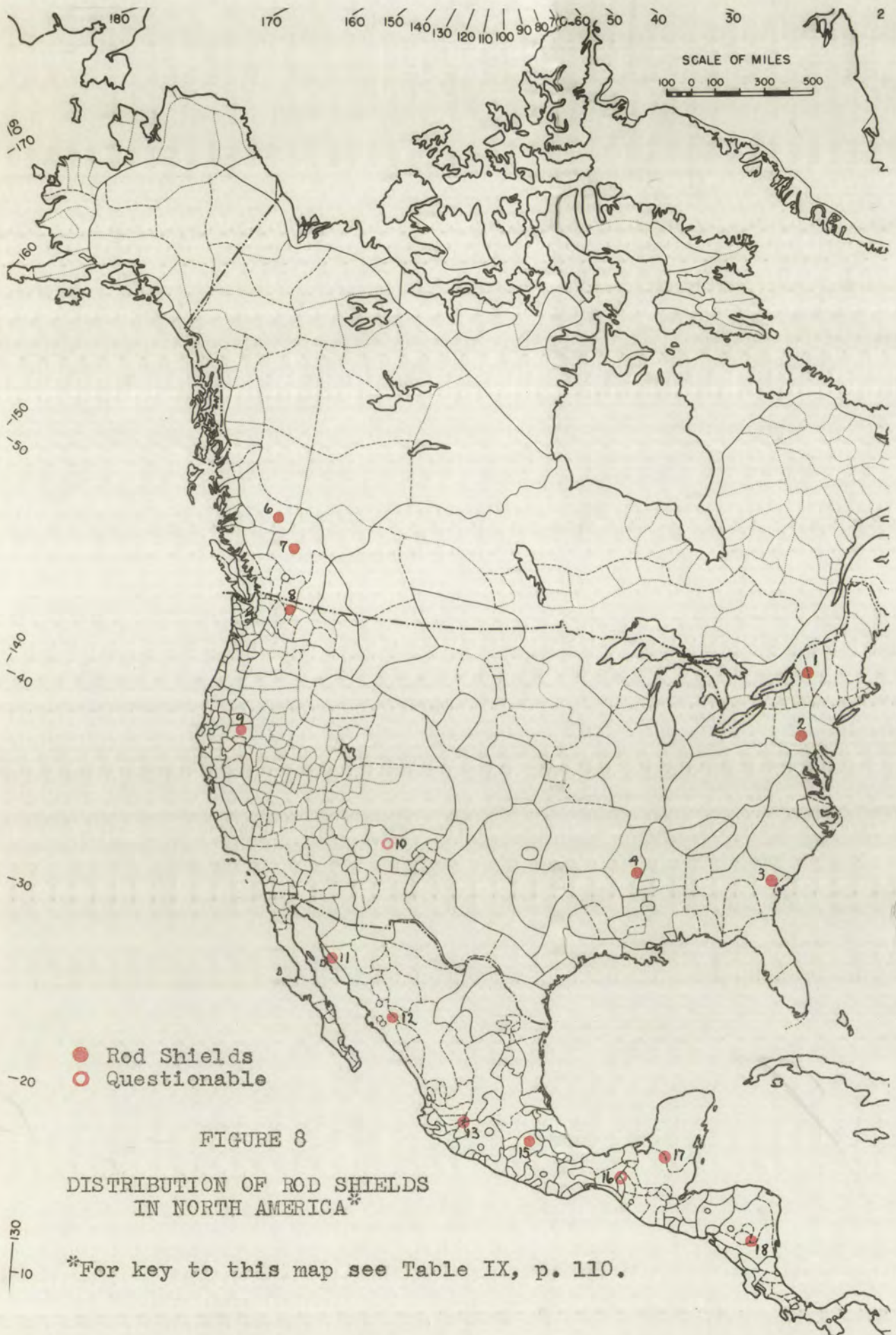
^bAs well as a small rod shield, a large one, possibly a curtain shield, is also cited.

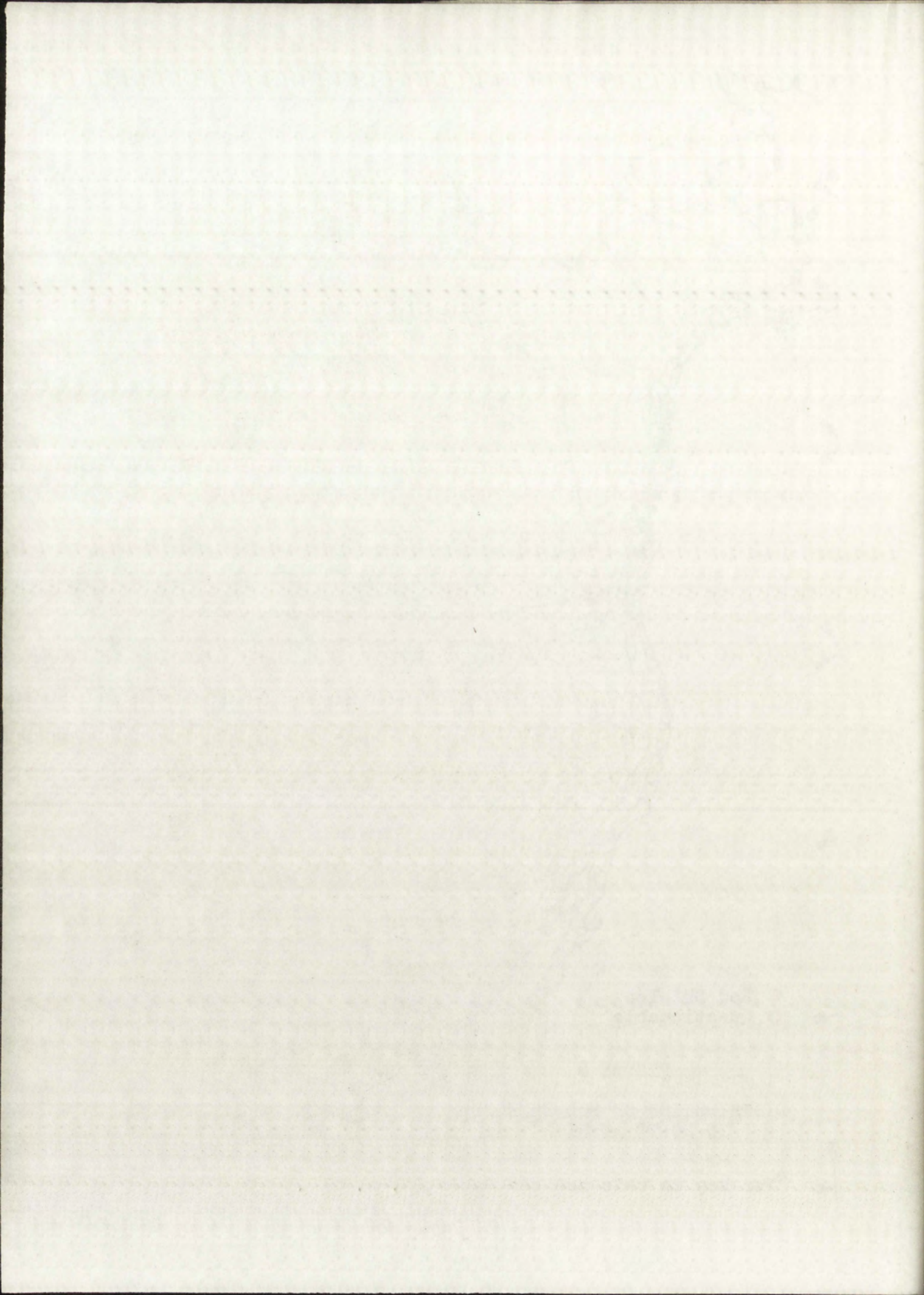
^cThe shield cited possibly is a curtain shield.

^dThe shield cited is a curtain shield.

^eAs well as a small rod shield, a curtain shield of rods also cited.

^fAs well as a small rod shield, a curtain shield, probably of rods, is also cited.





de la Vega account of the De Soto expedition, members of that party found "great numbers of oblong shields, all of which were of cane, woven," in one of the buildings surrounding the temple at Talomeco on the lower Savannah River.⁴ Although this account is generally considered the least authoritative of the longer relations, the context in which the statement above appeared strengthens it. Garcilaso's informant was specific in describing the contents of the eight salas or houses surrounding the temple. The cane shields were located in the eighth sala; in the seventh were found "round shields made of wood and of cowhide that had been brought from distant lands."⁵ The author of the narrative did not appear to be confusing cane shields seen elsewhere with another kind of shield seen at Talomeco. In the same sentence noting the cane shields, the author went on to say that they were "woven with such precision and strength that few crossbows were found among the Spaniards capable of passing an arrow completely through them. Such an experiment was tried in places outside of Cofachiqui."⁶ This last statement would seem to imply that they encountered

⁴Garcilaso de la Vega, The Florida of the Inca, . . . , 1951, p. 323.

⁵Ibid.

⁶Ibid.

de la Vega account of the...
that empty found...
which were of...
ing the couple at...
Although this account...
authoritative of the...
the statement about...
information was...
eight sales or...
shells were...
were found...
had been...
narrative did not...
elsewhere with...
In the same...
went on to say...
and...
lands...
Such an...
This last statement...

1951, p. 323.

Idid.

Idid.

a wider occurrence of these cane shields in the Southeast, unless the author was referring to shields carried away by the Spaniards from Talemeco or to those seen much farther along the journey at the crossing of the Mississippi River. At the latter place, the Oviedo account of the expedition, based on the Ranjel diary and usually considered to be the most authoritative source on the expedition, mentioned contact with people who "had shields made of canes joined, so strong and so closely inter-woven with such thread that a cross-bow could hardly pierce them."⁷

Although no further references to rod shields in the Southeast were located, the probability of their wider usage in that area was strengthened by several references giving a marginal status to their most likely competitor, hide shields. The Garcilaso version of De Soto stated that the round hide shields found at Talemeco on the lower Savannah "had been brought from distant lands."⁸ Le Page du Pratz, speaking of the round hide shields of the natives of French Louisiana, added that they were almost confined to the natives of the north and were not seen among those of

⁷Oviedo y Valdes, A Narrative . . . , 1904, pp. 137-38.

⁸Garcilaso de la Vega, loc. cit.

the south.⁹ Several sources placed the use of hide shields among marginal Southeastern peoples. The Elvas version of De Soto mentioned finding them at Pacaha, apparently in northeastern Arkansas,¹⁰ and Swanton cited them from several sources for the Hasinai¹¹ and "Oustack" or Westo (Yuchi?).¹² The only hide shield references found for the interior of the Southeast was for the Choctaw.¹³

The three references to rod shields for the Southeast were for the "Massawomek", the lower Savannah River, and the lower Mississippi River. It seemed likely, however, that rod shields were used more widely in the Southeast. No other area in the East outside the immediate rod armor area was indicated to have had this type of shield, except the Southeast. Since these shields have a greater areal range than the rod armor itself, it appears reasonable to consider as possible the development of eastern twined rod armor from

⁹Le Page du Pratz, Histoire . . . , 1758, Vol. 2, p. 420. "Il n'y a guère, que ceux du Nord qui se servent du bouclier; on n'en voit point à ceux du Midi."

¹⁰Elvas, True Relation . . . , 1904, p. 122.

¹¹Swanton, Source Material . . . , 1942, p. 147, citing Margrey, and Morfi.

¹²Swanton, The Indians of the Southeastern United States, 1946, p. 588, citing Alvard.

¹³Ibid., citing Byington.

the more widely distributed manufacture of twined or woven rod or cane shields. Certainly the two were related.

In addition to having occurred in eastern North America, twined rod shields were known to have been used in Central and Southern Mexico and Middle America (see Table IX and Figure 8.) These Mexican and Middle American rod shields were of two types: one circular and stiff, the other long, curtain-like, and flexible. Their areas overlapped, and one variety, the rod curtain type, apparently extended up the west coast at least as far as the Seri.¹⁴ A check of the northeast Mexican and Texas coast area revealed nothing in the way of twined rod armaments, and the earliest reference for shields in that coastal area was from Núñez Cabeza de Vaca who noted bison hide "targets" for a people westward along the coast from Galveston Island.¹⁵ In view of the occasional parallels between Middle America and the Southeast, the possibility of relationship between twined rod shields in these two areas is worthy of strong, though cautious, consideration.

In the area of the western armor association rod shields were mentioned sporadically, but there was no evidence that

¹⁴Bancroft, The Native Races . . . , 1875, Vol. 1, p. 579.

¹⁵Núñez Cabeza de Vaca, The Journey . . . , 1905, p. 94.

the more whole ...
rod or cane ...
... In ...
twined ...
and ...
Figure 3. ...
wave of ...
certain-like, ...
one variety, ...
the west coast ...
northern ...
the way of ...
for ...
Vase who ...
along the ...
occasional ...
the possibility ...
in these two ...
consideration.

In the area ...
were mentioned ...

p. 277.

15

they represented a single, widely distributed type. The southern Okanagan, according to Cline, used "square slat shields . . . made of sticks 'braided' closely together in a checker (?) weave."¹⁶ The Carrier were noted to have used a rod shield by Morice. His informants referred to a type of shield once used by the descriptive name "amelanchiar which is held by the hand," amelanchiar being the wood which provided the rods for their rod body armor.¹⁷

Fraser reported a rod shield for the Shuswap and said that it was "'large enough to cover the whole body, composed of splinters of wood like the ribs of stays, and neatly enclosed with twine made of hemp.'"¹⁸ Since the shield covered the whole body, it was probably akin to the hide curtain shields of the West (see Table VI, Figure 6) which were recorded for several Plateau peoples, namely the Carrier,¹⁹ Thompson,²⁰ Kutenai,²¹ and Coeur d'Alene,²² as well as for

¹⁶Cline, et al., The Sinkaietk . . . , 1938, p. 55.

¹⁷Morice, The Canadian Dénés, 1906, p. 217.

¹⁸Teit, The Shuswap, 1909, p. 538.

¹⁹Ibid., pp. 538-39.

²⁰Teit, The Thompson Indians . . . , 1900, p. 266.

²¹Ray, Plateau, 1942, p. 153.

²²Ibid.

the Shuswap themselves.²³

Another group in the West, besides the Carrier and Shuswap, noted to have used a rod shield was the Western Achomawi of California. Among them it was described as circular, with a string in the center by which to hold it.²⁴ The same author received negative statements for the "circular rod shield" from informants in several other groups in the vicinity, including the Eastern Achomawi, Modoc, Wintun, Maidu, and Nisenan. It would seem that this rod shield was unique with the Western Achomawi, or the record was due to a misunderstanding.

The only other group in the West for whom an ascription for rod shields was located was the Navajo. Hough said that they "made a shield of cedar rods twined together with cord" and cited a specimen in the U. S. National Museum.²⁵ It is suggested that this ascription was probably an error, possibly resulting from cataloging on the basis of misinformation. Hill in his Navaho Warfare made no mention of such a shield for this group.²⁶

²³Teit, The Shuswap, 1909, p. 538.

²⁴Voegelin, Northeast California, 1942, p. 73.

²⁵Hough, Primitive American Armor, 1895, p. 628.

²⁶Hill, Navaho Warfare, 1936.

All western tribes having rod shields also had rod armor. None were found outside the rod armor area; therefore, there were no indications that this type of shield had affinities outside the range of western rod armor. The basketry shields from the Anasazi ruins of the Southwest,²⁷ if they were shields, were of coiled basketry and were not produced by a twining technique.

In conclusion, in the West the few descriptions of rod shields gave no evidence that they represented a standardized, widely distributed phenomenon. In the East there was even less information on the construction of these shields, but source material suggested there was a relationship between the northeastern rod armor area and a larger area of twined rod shields which extended into the Southeast.

²⁷Morris and Burgh, Anasazi Basketry . . . , 1941, pp. 51-2.

VI. SUMMARY AND CONCLUSION

It has been the proposition of this study that there existed in North America essentially three separate areas of armor usage, none of which were historically or geographically related in any direct or primary manner. These three areas and their associated armors have been defined and regionalized in the foregoing pages. They are summarized with their corroborative evidence as follows.

The first of these was that of Alaskan plate armor. Its entity separate from other New World armors was based on the following facts. There was an unbridged gap between Alaskan plate armor and the rest of New World armors. The Alaskan plate armor distribution was geographically contiguous with, and peripheral to that of Asiatic plate armor. Alaskan plates were essentially of the same construction as those of Asiatic plate armor. Plate armor was chronologically recent in Alaska relative to the vast extent of New World armors. And lastly, slat armor, the New World type most often proposed as affinal to plate armor, can be demonstrated to have shown a much closer affinity to New World rod armor. This argument does not purport that Alaskan plate armor was not related secondarily to other armors in western North America through a generalized East Asiatic armor tradition as an intermediary. Such an intermediate tradition

It has been...
existed in...
of answer...
only...
areas and...
regional...
with...
The...
its...
on the...
Alaskan...
Alaskan...
regions...
Alaskan...
those of...
is...
Alaska...
often...
ted to...
army...
army...
North...
then...

probably did exist, which was evidenced by the usage in both East Asia and North America of wrap-around, open-side armor and armor of vertical long element construction. The proximity of the two armor using areas enhanced the probability of a relationship.

The second of the New World armor-using areas was that of the armor association of western North America, incorporating two contrasting types of armor--armor of hide construction on the one hand and armor of rod or slat construction on the other. The composition and exclusiveness of this association were based upon the following facts.

Hide tunic and jacket armor existed in a continuous wide distribution in western North America, was similar to no other American armor outside that area, and was in contact with neither of the other two armor-using areas as defined in this study. Variations in hide armor were present in the area of occurrence.

The distribution of rod armor in the West was coincident with the more westerly portion of the hide armor area; rod and slat armors existed almost always in direct association with or contiguous to hide armor. Western rod armor represented a recurring complex of construction techniques not found in Alaskan plate armor.

Slat armor was directly related to western rod armor and bore only a varietal difference from it. The evidence

probably did exist, which was evidenced by the usage in both East Asia and North America of wrap-around, open-side armor and armor of vertical long elements. The work-
 tility of the two armor using areas enhanced the probability of a relationship.

The second of the New World armor-using areas was that of the armor association of western North America, incorporating two contrasting types of armor--armor of hide construction on the one hand and armor of rod or plate construction on the other. The composition and exclusiveness of this association were based upon the following facts.

Hide armor and jacket armor existed in a continuous wide distribution in western North America, was similar to no other American armor outside this area, and was in contact with neither of the other two armor-using areas as defined in this study. Uniqueness in hide armor were present in the area of occurrence.

The distribution of rod armor in the West was coincident with the more westerly portion of the hide armor area; rod and plate armors existed almost always in direct association with or contiguous to hide armor. Western rod armor represented a recurring complex of construction techniques not found in Alaskan plate armor.

Slat armor was directly related to eastern rod armor and bore only a vertical difference from it. The evidence

is that slat armor distribution was coincidental with the total range of western rod armor, but appeared sporadically within it. Slat armor existed side by side with rod armor in the same regional groups, and in a few cases slats and rods were both incorporated in the same piece of armor. Slat armor had the general characteristics of western rod armor. Finally, the distributional arguments against direct New World affinities for plate armor, given above, tended also to discount the only other possible affinity within reason for slat armor.

The third of the New World armor-using areas was eastern North America, where there occurred a rod armor different in character from that of western North America. The evidences for this position were these. Eastern rod armor did not appear to follow the western tradition of body encircling armor, but instead showed strong probabilities of having been formed of unit pieces, centering upon a separate breast piece or plate. No rod armor could be found in the intervening region to fill the gap between eastern and western rod armors. The only armor in the intervening area was hide armor, which was clearly peripheral to the hide armors of the West. The hide armor distribution of the West did not connect with that of eastern rod armor. No slat variation appeared in the eastern armor area, though it was relatively common in the West. The facing edges of the two

distributions showed no grading of type. The obviously related technique of using rods for shield construction existed coincidental with eastern rod armors, extended into the Southeast, and occurred again in Mexico and Middle America. A possible basis was thus provided for the development of rod armor in the East separate from that of the West.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Anonymous
1804 Extract from an Indian History. Collections of the Massachusetts Historical Society, Vol. 9, pp. 99-102, Boston.
- Bancroft, Hubert Howe
1875-76 The Native Races of the Pacific States of North America. 6 vols. New York.
- Bandelier, Adolf F.
1877 On the Art of War and Mode of Warfare of the Ancient Mexicans. Tenth Annual Report of the Trustees of the Peabody Museum of American Archaeology and Ethnology, pp. 95-161, Cambridge.
- Barnett, Homer Garner
1937 Oregon Coast. Anthropological Records, Vol. 1, pp. 155-204, Berkeley.
1939 Gulf of Georgia Salish. Anthropological Records, Vol. 1, no. 5, pp. 221-295, Berkeley.
- Barreiro, Antonio
1942 Ojeada sobre Nuevo-Mexico. [Puebla, 1832.] (See Carroll and Haggard, Three New Mexico Chronicles, pp. 263-318.)
- Barrett, S. A.
1952 Material Aspects of Pomo Culture, Part One. Bulletin of the Public Museum of the City of Milwaukee, Vol. 20, pp. 1-260, Milwaukee.
- Batchelor, John
1892 The Ainu of Japan. London: The Religious Tract Society.
(1927?) Ainu Life and Lore. Tokyo: Kyobunkwan.
- Beals, Ralph Leon
1932 The Comparative Ethnology of Northern Mexico Before 1750. Ibero-Americana, No. 2, pp. 93-225, Berkeley.
1943 The Aboriginal Culture of the Cahita Indians. Ibero-Americana, No. 19, Berkeley.
- Biggar, H. P., ed.
1922-36 The Works of Samuel de Champlain. 6 vols. Toronto: The Champlain Society.

Anonymous

1930

1931-1932

Barnett, James

1937

Barnett, James

1937

Barnett, James

1937

1938

Barnett, James

1938

Barnett, James

1938

Barnett, James

1938

(1938)

Barnett, James

1938

1938

Barnett, James

1938-39

- 1924 The Voyages of Jacques Cartier. Publications of the Public Archives of Canada, No. 11, Ottawa: F. A. Acland.
- Boas, Franz
 1899 Summary of the Work of the Committee in British Columbia. (See Tylor, The North-Western Tribes of Canada. pp. 667-683.)
 1901 Kathlamet Texts. Bulletin 26, U. S. Bureau of American Ethnology. Washington: Government Printing Office.
- Bogoras, Waldemar
 1904-9 The Chukchee. Memoirs of the American Museum of Natural History, Vol. 11, (Franz Boas, ed.) Leiden: E. J. Brill, Ltd.; New York: G. E. Stechert & Co.
- Bolles, T. Dix
 1889 A Preliminary Catalog of the Eskimo Collection in the United States National Museum. Report of the United States National Museum, 1887, (Part 2 of the Annual Report of the Board of Regents of the Smithsonian Institution, 1887,) pp. 335-365. Washington: Government Printing Office.
- Boucher, Pierre, Sieur de Boucherville
 1883 Canada in the Seventeenth Century. [Paris, 1664.] (Édward Louis Montizambert, tr.) Montreal: George E. Desbarats and Co.
- Bourne, Edward Gaylord, ed.
 1904 Narratives of the Career of Hernando de Soto in the Conquest of Florida. 2 vols. New York: A. S. Barnes and Company.
- Bushnell, David I., Jr.
 1906 The Sloane Collection in the British Museum. American Anthropologist, n.s., Vol. 8, pp. 671-685, Lancaster.
- Cadzow, D. A.
 1925 Objects from St. Lawrence Island. Indian Notes, Vol. 2, pp. 122-125. New York: Museum of the American Indian, Heye Foundation.

1925 The ...

1927 ...

1928 ...

1929 ...

1930 ...

1931 ...

1932 ...

1933 ...

1934 ...

1935 ...

Carroll, Horace Bailey and J. Villasana Haggard, eds.
 1942 Three New Mexico Chronicles. Albuquerque: The Quivira Society. (See Barreiro, Ojeada sobre Nuevo-Mexico.)

Cartier, Jacques

- 1924 Cartier's Second Voyage, 1535-36. MS 5589, Bibliotheque Nationale, Paris. (See Biggar, The Voyages of Jacques Cartier, pp. 83-246.)
 1928 A Shorte and Brief Narration of the Navigation Made by the Commandement of the King of France to the Islands of Canada, Hochelaga, Saguinay, and divers others which now are Called New France. (See Hakluyt, 1927-28, Vol. 6, pp. 396-440.)

Champlain, Sieur de

- 1925 The Voyages to the Great River Saint Lawrence by the Sieur de Champlain, Captain in the Royal Navy, from the Year 1608 until 1612. [Paris, 1613.] (See Biggar, The Works of Samuel de Champlain, Vol. 2, pp. 1-236.)
 1929 Voyages and Discoveries Made in New France, from the Year 1615 to the End of the Year 1618. [Paris, 1619.] (See Biggar, The Works of Samuel de Champlain, Vol. 3, pp. 1-230.)

Chard, Chester Stevens

- 1953 Kamchadal Culture and Its Relationships in the Old and New Worlds. (Unpublished Ph.D. thesis.) Berkeley: University of California.

Charlevoix, Francois Xavier de

- 1923 Journal of a Voyage to North America. [London, 1761.] 2 vols. Chicago: The Caxton Club.

Cline, Walter, Rachel S. Commons, May Mandelbaum, Richard H. Post, and L. V. W. Walters

- 1938 The Sinkaiehk or Southern Okanagan of Washington. General Series in Anthropology, No. 6, Menasha.

Collins, Henry B., Jr.

- 1937 Archeology of St. Lawrence Island, Alaska. Smithsonian Miscellaneous Collections, Vol. 96, No. 1. Washington: The Smithsonian Institution.

Cook, James

- 1785 A Voyage to the Pacific Ocean. (3rd edition). 3 vols. London: G. Nicol and T. Cadell.

63

Carroll, James
1933

Carroll, James
1933

Carroll, James
1933

Carroll, James
1933

Carroll, James
1933

Carroll, James
1933

Carroll, James
1933

Carroll, James
1933

Carroll, James
1933

Carroll, James
1933

COBBLESTONE

- Coues, Elliott
 1893 History of the Expedition under the Command of Lewis and Clark. 4 vols. New York: Francis P. Harper.
- Curtis, Edward S.
 1907-30 The North American Indian. 20 vols. (Vols. 1-5, Cambridge: The University Press; Vols. 6-20, Norwood, Mass.: Plimpton Press.)
- Curtis, F. S., Jr.
 1927 Spanish Arms and Armor in the Southwest. New Mexico Historical Review, Vol. 2, pp. 107-133. Santa Fe: The Historical Society of New Mexico.
- Cushing, Frank Hamilton
 1896 Pueblo Indians, or Pueblos. Johnson's Universal Cyclopedia, Vol. 6, pp. 848-850. New York: A. J. Johnson Company.
- Dall, W. H.
 1875 Alaskan Mummies. The American Naturalist, Vol. 9, No. 8. Salem, Mass: The Peabody Academy of Science.
 1878 On the Remains of Later Pre-Historic Man Obtained from Caves in the Catherina Archipelago. Smithsonian Contributions to Knowledge, Vol. 22, Article 6. Washington.
- de Laguna, Frederica
 1934 The Archaeology of Cook Inlet, Alaska. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press.
- Dixon, Roland B.
 1907 The Shasta. Bulletin of the American Museum of Natural History, Vol. 17, pp. 381-498. New York.
- Driver, Harold E.
 1939 Northwest California. Anthropological Records, Vol. 1, pp. 297-433. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Drucker, Philip
 1937 The Tolowa and Their Southwest Oregon Kin. University of California Publications in American Archaeology and Ethnology, Vol. 36, pp. 221-300. Berkeley: University of California Press.

Colles, E. J.

1903

Curtis, E. J.

1907-30

Curtis, E. J.

1907

Cushing, Frank

1900

Dall, E. H.

1907

Dall, E. H.

1907

de la Roche, E. J.

1907

Dixon, E. J.

1907

Driver, E. J.

1907

Drummond, E. J.

1907

- 1939 Contributions to Alsea Ethnography. University of California Publications in American Archaeology and Ethnology, Vol. 35, pp. 81-102. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- 1941 Yuman-Piman. Anthropological Records, Vol. 6, pp. 91-230. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- 1950 Northwest Coast. Anthropological Records, Vol. 9, pp. 157-294. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- 1951 The Northern and Central Nootkan Tribes. United States Bureau of American Ethnology, Bulletin 144. Washington: Government Printing Office.

DuBois, Cora

- 1935 Wintu Ethnography. University of California Publications in American Archaeology and Ethnology, Vol. 36, pp. 1-148. Berkeley: University of California Press.

Dunn, William Edward

- 1911 Apache Relations in Texas, 1718-1750. The Quarterly of the Texas State Historical Association, Vol. 14, pp. 198-274.

Eells, Myron

- 1887 The Puget Sound Indians. The American Antiquarian and Oriental Journal, Vol. 9, pp. 211-219. Chicago: F. H. Revell.
- 1889 The Twana, Chemakum, and Klallam Indians of Washington Territory. Annual Report of the Board of Regents of the Smithsonian Institution, 1887, Part 1, pp. 605-681. Washington: Government Printing Office.

Elvas, Fidalgo of

- 1904 True Relation of the Vicissitudes that Attended the Governor Don Hernando de Soto. (See Bourne, 1904, Vol. 1, pp. 1-223.)

Emmons, G. T.

- 1911a Native Account of the Meeting Between La Perouse and the Tlingit. American Anthropologist, n.s., Vol. 13, pp. 294-298. Lancaster: The New Era Printing Co.
- 1911b The Tahltan Indians. Anthropological Publications of the University Museum, Vol. 4, pp. 1-120. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press.

1933

1931

1930

1927

Dubois, Cora

1935

Winn, William

1931

Hollis, Wm

1937

1939

Hives, Eric

1904

Emmons, W. J.

1914

1912

- Espinosa, J. Manuel
1942 Crusaders of the Rio Grande. Chicago: Institute of Jesuit History.
- Essne, Frank
1942 Round Valley. Anthropological Records, Vol. 8, pp. 1-97. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Ewers, John C.
1955 The Horse in Blackfoot Indian Culture. Smithsonian Institution, Bureau of American Ethnology, Bulletin 159. Washington: Government Printing Office.
- Farrand, Livingston
1899 The Chilcotin. (See Tylor, The North-Western Tribes of Canada, pp. 645-648.)
- Flannery, Regina
1939 An Analysis of Coastal Algonquian Culture. Anthropological Series, No. 7, Washington: The Catholic University of America Press.
- Fletcher, Alice C., and Francis La Flesche
1911 The Omaha Tribe. Twenty-Seventh Annual Report of the Bureau of American Ethnology, 1905-1906, pp. 17-672. Washington: Government Printing Office.
- Foster, George M.
1941 A Summary of Yuki Culture. Anthropological Records, Vol. 5, No. 3, pp. 155-244. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Franchère, Gabriel
1904 Narrative of a Voyage to the Northwest Coast of America in the Years 1811, 1812, 1813, and 1814. [New York, 1854.] (See Thwaites, Early Western Travels, Vol. 6, pp. 167-410.)
- Franciscan Fathers, The
1910 An Ethnologic Dictionary of the Navajo Language. St. Michaels, Arizona: The Franciscan Fathers.
- Fraser, Simon
1889 Journal of a Voyage from the Rocky Mountains to the Pacific Coast, 1808. (See Masson, Vol. 1, pp. 155-221.)

Bartholomew, John
1942
of 1942

Bartholomew, John
1942
of 1942

Bartholomew, John
1942
of 1942

Bartholomew, John
1942
of 1942

Bartholomew, John
1942
of 1942

Bartholomew, John
1942
of 1942

Bartholomew, John
1942
of 1942

Bartholomew, John
1942
of 1942

Bartholomew, John
1942
of 1942

Bartholomew, John
1942
of 1942

- Garcilaso de la Vega, el Inca
 1951 The Florida of the Inca. [Madrid, 1723.]
 (John Grier Varner and Jeannette Johnson Varner,
 eds.) Austin: University of Texas Press.
- Garfield, Viola E.
 1939 Tsimshian Clan and Society. University of Wash-
 ington Publications in Anthropology, Vol. 7,
 pp. 167-340. Seattle: University of Washington
 Press.
- Garth, Thomas R.
 1953 Atsugewi Ethnography. Anthropological Records,
 Vol. 14, No. 2, pp. 129-212. Berkeley: Univer-
 sity of California Press.
- Geist, Otto William, and Froelich G. Rainey
 1936 Archaeological Excavations at Kukulik, St. Law-
 rence Island, Alaska. Miscellaneous Publications
 of the University of Alaska, Vol. 2, Washington:
 U. S. Government Printing Office.
- Gibbs, George
 1877 Tribes of Western Washington and Northwestern
 Oregon. Contributions to North American Ethnol-
 ogy, Vol. 1, pp. 157-361. Washington: Govern-
 ment Printing Office.
- Giddings, James Lewis
 1952 The Arctic Woodland Culture of the Kobuk River.
 Museum Monographs. Philadelphia: University
 of Pennsylvania Press.
- Gifford, Edward Winslow
 1932 The Southeastern Yavapai. University of California
 Publications in American Archaeology and Ethnology,
 Vol. 29, pp. 177-252. Berkeley: University of
 California Press.
 1936 Northeastern and Western Yavapai. University of
 California Publications in American Archaeology
 and Ethnology, Vol. 34, pp. 247-354. Berkeley:
 University of California Press.
 1940 Apache-Pueblo. Anthropological Records, Vol. 4,
 pp. 1-207. Berkeley: University of California
 Press.

Garcia, de la Vega, et al.
1931 The People of the Lake
(John Peter Garcia and
Garcia, de la Vega, et al.)

Garcia, de la Vega, et al.
1933 The People of the Lake
(John Peter Garcia and
Garcia, de la Vega, et al.)

Garcia, de la Vega, et al.
1933 The People of the Lake
(John Peter Garcia and
Garcia, de la Vega, et al.)

Garcia, de la Vega, et al.
1933 The People of the Lake
(John Peter Garcia and
Garcia, de la Vega, et al.)

Garcia, de la Vega, et al.
1933 The People of the Lake
(John Peter Garcia and
Garcia, de la Vega, et al.)

Garcia, de la Vega, et al.
1933 The People of the Lake
(John Peter Garcia and
Garcia, de la Vega, et al.)

Garcia, de la Vega, et al.
1933 The People of the Lake
(John Peter Garcia and
Garcia, de la Vega, et al.)

Garcia, de la Vega, et al.
1933 The People of the Lake
(John Peter Garcia and
Garcia, de la Vega, et al.)

Gifford, Edward Winslow, and Stanislaw Klimek

- 1936 Yana. University of California Publications in American Archaeology and Ethnology, Vol. 37, pp. 71-100. Berkeley, University of California Press.

Gifford, Edward Winslow, and Alfred Louis Kroeber

- 1937 Pomo. University of California Publications in American Archaeology and Ethnology, Vol. 37, pp. 117-254. Berkeley: University of California Press.

Goldschmidt, Walter

- 1951 Nomlaki Ethnography. University of California Publications in American Archaeology and Ethnology, Vol. 42, pp. viii, 303-443. Berkeley: University of California Press.

Hackett, Charles Willson, ed.

- 1923-37 Historical Documents relating to New Mexico, Nueva Vizcaya, and Approaches Thereto, to 1773, collected by Adolph F. A. Bandelier and Fanny R. Bandelier. 3 vols. Washington: The Carnegie Institution of Washington.

Hakluyt, Richard

- 1927-28 The Principal Navigations, Voyages, Traffiques and Discoveries of the English Nation. 10 vols. London: J. M. Dent and Sons, Ltd; New York: E. P. Dutton & Co.

Hariot, Thomas

- 1903 A Briefe and True Report of the New Found Land of Virginia. [London, 1588.] New York: Dodd, Mead & Co.

Harrington, John P.

- 1942 Central California Coast. Anthropological Records, Vol. 7, pp. 1-46. Berkeley: University of California Press.

Harrison, John A.

- 1955 Kita Yezo Zusetsu or a Description of the Island of Northern Yezo by Mamiya Rinsō, translated and annotated by John A. Harrison. Proceedings of the American Philosophical Society, Vol. 99, pp. 93-117. Philadelphia: American Philosophical Society.

1935
1936
1937

1938
1939
1940

1941
1942
1943

1944
1945
1946

1947
1948
1949

1950
1951
1952

1953
1954
1955

1956
1957
1958

Hearne, Samuel

- 1911 A Journey from Prince of Wales Fort, in Hudson's Bay, to the Northern Ocean, In the Years 1769, 1770, 1771, and 1772. [London, 1795.] The Publications of the Champlain Society, Vol. 6. Toronto: The Champlain Society.

Hill, W. W.

- 1936 Navaho Warfare. Yale University Publications in Anthropology, No. 5. New Haven: Yale University Press.

Holt, C.

- 1946 Shasta Ethnography. Anthropological Records, Vol. 3, pp. 299-349. Berkeley: University of California Press.

Honigsmann, John J.

- 1954 The Kaska Indians: An Ethnographic Reconstruction. Yale University Publications in Anthropology, No. 51. New Haven: Yale University Press.

Hough, Walter

- 1895 Primitive American Armor. Report of the United States National Museum, 1893, pp. 627-651. Washington: Government Printing Office.

Hrdlička, Alšs

- 1945 The Aleutian and Commander Islands and Their Inhabitants. Philadelphia: The Wistar Institute of Anatomy and Biology.

Jenness, Diamond

- 1928 Archaeological Investigations in Bering Strait. National Museum of Canada, Bulletin No. 50 (Annual Report for 1926), pp. 71-80. Ottawa: F. A. Acland.
- 1937 The Sekani Indians of British Columbia. National Museum of Canada, Bulletin No. 84 (Anthropological Series No. 20). Ottawa: J. O. Patenande.

Jochelson, Waldemar

- 1905-08 The Koryak. (Franz Boas, ed.) Memoirs of the American Museum of Natural History, Vol. 10. Leiden, E. J. Brill, Ltd.; New York: G. E. Stechert.

Hearings, Senate.
1931 A Committee Report of the Senate on the
Hearings on the Senate Committee on the
Hearings on the Senate Committee on the
Hearings on the Senate Committee on the
Hearings on the Senate Committee on the

Hill, W. W.
1936 Lawrence Sanders. University Publications in
Anthropology. Vol. 1. New Haven: Yale University
Press.

Holt, C.
1916 Spain's Economic History. University of California Press.
Vol. 1. pp. 1-100. Berkeley: University of
California Press.

Hornigum, John A.
1935 The Spanish Economy. University of California Press.
Berkeley: University of California Press.

Hough, Walter
1935 Spanish Economic History. University of California Press.
Berkeley: University of California Press.

Hrdlicka, Alice
1935 The Spanish Economy. University of California Press.
Berkeley: University of California Press.

Jennings, Desmond
1938 Spanish Economic History. University of California Press.
Berkeley: University of California Press.

Jochelson, Wilbur
1905-08 The Peoples of the Americas. Smithsonian Institution.
Washington: Smithsonian Institution.

Joyce, Thomas A.

1920 Mexican Archaeology. London: Philip Lee Warner.

Kellogg, Louise Phelps, ed.

1917 Early Narratives of the Northwest, 1634-1699.
New York: Charles Scribner's Sons.

Klimek, Stanislaw

1935 The Structure of California Indian Culture.
University of California Publications in American Archaeology and Ethnology, Vol. 37, pp. 1-70.
Berkeley: University of California Press.

Kniffen, Fred, Gordon MacGregor, Robert McKennan, Scudder Mekeel, and Maurice Mook, (A. L. Kroeber, ed.)

1935 Walapai Ethnography. Memoirs of the American Anthropological Association, No. 42, Menasha.

Koppert, Vincent A.

1930 Contributions to Clayoquot Ethnology. The Catholic University of America, Anthropological Series, No. 1. Washington: The Catholic University of America Press.

Krasheninnikov, Stepan Petrovich

1770 Histoire et Description du Kamtchatka. 2 vols.
Amsterdam: M. M. Rey.

Kroeber, Alfred Louis

1925 Handbook of the Indians of California. United States Bureau of American Ethnology, Bulletin 78. Washington: Government Printing Office.

1931 The Seri. Southwest Museum Papers, No. 6. Los Angeles: Southwest Museum.

1932 The Patwin and Their Neighbors. University of California Publications in American Archaeology and Ethnology, Vol. 29, pp. 253-423. Berkeley: University of California Press.

Lalemant, Jerome

1898 Relations of What Occurred in the Mission of the Hurons from the Month of June of the Year 1641, to the Month of June of the Year 1642. [Paris, 1643.] (See Thwaites, Jesuit Relations, 1896-1901, Vol. 22, p. 19 - Vol. 23, p. 233.)

Joyce, Thomas A.
1930

Keller, Pauline
1931

Kline, Benjamin
1932

Knight, Robert
1933

Knight, Robert
1934

Knight, Robert
1935

Knight, Robert
1936

Knight, Robert
1937

Knight, Robert
1938

Knight, Robert
1939

Knight, Robert
1940

Knight, Robert
1941

Knight, Robert
1942

Knight, Robert
1943

Knight, Robert
1944

La Perouse, Jean Francois de Galaup, comte de
 1807 A Voyage Round the World Performed in the Years
1785, 1786, 1787, and 1788. (The third edition.)
 3 vols. London: Lackington, Allen, and Co.

Laufer, Berthold
 1914 Chinese Clay Figures, Part I, Prolegomena on the
History of Defensive Armor. Field Museum of
 Natural History, Anthropological Series, Vol. 13,
 pp. 73-315, Chicago.

Le Page du Pratz, Antoine S.
 1758 Histoire de la Louisiane. 3 vols. Paris: De
 Bure.

Lescarbot, Marc
 1907-14 The History of New France. [Paris, 1618.]
 3 vols. The Publications of the Champlain Soci-
 ety, Vols. 1, 7, 11. Toronto: The Champlain
 Society.

Lewis, Anna
 1924 La Harpe's First Expedition in Oklahoma, 1718-
1719. Chronicles of Oklahoma, Vol. 2, pp. 331-
 349. Oklahoma City: The Oklahoma Historical
 Society.

Lindeström, Peter Mårtensson
 1925 Geographia Americae, with an Account of the Dela-
ware Indians, based on Surveys and Notes made in
1654-1656. Philadelphia: Swedish Colonial
 Society.

Loeb, Edwin Meyer
 1932 The Western Kuksu Cult. University of California
 Publications in American Archaeology and Ethnology,
 Vol. 33, pp. 1-137. Berkeley: University of
 California Press.
 1933 The Eastern Kuksu Cult. University of California
 Publications in American Archaeology and Ethnology,
 Vol. 33, pp. 139-232. Berkeley: University of
 California Press.

Lowie, Robert H.
 1924 Notes on Shoshonean Ethnography. Anthropological
 Papers of the American Museum of Natural History,
 Vol. 20, pp. 185-314. New York: American Museum
 Press.

La Poudre, Tom, 1907
A. 1907
1907

La Poudre, Tom, 1907
A. 1907
1907

La Poudre, Tom, 1907
A. 1907
1907

La Poudre, Tom, 1907
A. 1907
1907

La Poudre, Tom, 1907
A. 1907
1907

La Poudre, Tom, 1907
A. 1907
1907

La Poudre, Tom, 1907
A. 1907
1907

La Poudre, Tom, 1907
A. 1907
1907

La Poudre, Tom, 1907
A. 1907
1907

McGee, W. J.

- 1898 The Seri Indians. Seventeenth Annual Report of the Bureau of American Ethnology, 1895-96, Part 1, pp. 1-344. Washington: Government Printing Office.

Margry, Pierre

- 1879-88 Mémoires et Documents pour Servir à L'histoire des Origines Françaises des Pays d'Outre-mer. 6 vols. Paris: Maisonneuve et cie.

Mason, Otis R.

- 1889 The Ray Collection from Hupa Reservation. Annual Report of the Board of Regents of the Smithsonian Institution, 1886, Part 1, pp. 205-239. Washington: Government Printing Office.

Masson, Louis Francois Rodrique, ed.

- 1889-90 Les Bourgeois de la Compagnie du Nord-Ouest. 2 vols. Quebec: A. Cote et cie.

Meares, John

- 1790 Voyages Made in the Years 1788 and 1789, from China to the North West Coast of America. London: Logographic Press.

Morice, Adrian Gabriel

- 1889 The Western Dénés--Their Manners and Customs. Proceedings of the Royal Canadian Institute, Third Series, Vol. 7, pp. 109-174. Toronto: The Copp, Clark Co., Ltd.
- 1894 Notes Archaeological, Industrial and Sociological, on the Western Dénés with an Ethnographical Sketch of the Same. Transactions of the Royal Canadian Institute, Vol. 4, pp. 1-222. Toronto: Copp, Clark Co., Ltd.
- 1904 The History of the Northern Interior of British Columbia. (Second ed.) Toronto: William Briggs.
- 1906 The Canadian Dénés. Provincial Museum and Art Gallery of Ontario, Annual Archaeological Report, 1905, pp. 187-219, Toronto.

Morris, Earl H. and Robert F. Burgh

- 1941 Anasazi Basketry, Basket Maker II through Pueblo III. Carnegie Institution of Washington, Publication 533. Washington.

Notes, W. W. 1898
The first I...
The first I...
The first I...

Notes, Henry 1898-99
The first I...
The first I...
The first I...

Notes, John 1899
The first I...
The first I...
The first I...

Notes, John 1899-90
The first I...
The first I...
The first I...

Notes, John 1900
The first I...
The first I...
The first I...

Notes, John 1900
The first I...
The first I...
The first I...

Notes, John 1901
The first I...
The first I...
The first I...

Notes, John 1901
The first I...
The first I...
The first I...

Notes, John 1901
The first I...
The first I...
The first I...

Nelson, Edward William

- 1899 The Eskimo About Bering Strait. Eighteenth Annual Report of the Bureau of American Ethnology, 1896-97, Part 1, pp. 3-518. Washington: Government Printing Office.

Newcombe, C. F.

- 1907 The Haida Indians. Congress International des Americanistes, Fifteenth Session, 1906, Vol. 1, pp. 135-149. Quebec: Dussault & Proulx.

Niblack, Albert P.

- 1890 The Coast Indians of Southern Alaska and Northern British Columbia. Report of the United States National Museum, 1888, pp. 225-386. Washington: Government Printing Office.

Nomland, Gladys Ayer

- 1935 Sinkyone Notes. University of California Publications in American Archaeology and Ethnology, Vol. 36, pp. 149-178. Berkeley: University of California Press.

Noticias Varias . . .

- 1878 Noticias Varias de Nueva Galicia, Intendencia de Guadalajara. Edicion de "El Estado de Jalisco." Guadalajara: Tip. de Banda.

Núñez Cabeza de Vaca, Alvar

- 1905 The Journey of Alvar Núñez Cabeza de Vaca and his Companions from Florida to the Pacific, 1528-1536. (Adolph F. Bandelier, ed.) New York: A. S. Barnes & Co.

Nuttall, Zelia

- 1892 Ancient Mexican Shields. Internationales Archiv für Ethnographie, Vol. 5, Part 1, pp. 34-53, Leiden.

Osgood, Cornelius B.

- 1932 The Ethnology of the Great Bear Lake Indians. National Museum of Canada, Bulletin No. 70, pp. 31-97. Ottawa: F. A. Acland.
- 1933 Tanaina Culture. American Anthropologist, n.s., Vol. 35, pp. 695-714. Menasha: Geo. Banta Co.
- 1937 The Ethnography of the Tanaina. Yale University Publications in Anthropology, No. 16. New Haven: Yale University Press.

57

Holmes, Lawrence
1907

Newcomb, C.
1907

Wieland, Albert
1908

Holmes, Charles
1907

Holmes, Charles
1907

Holmes, Charles
1907

Holmes, Charles
1907

Holmes, Charles
1907

Holmes, Charles
1907

Holmes, Charles
1907

- Oviedo y Valdés, Gonzalo Fernández de
 1851-55 Historia General y Natural de las Indias, Islas y Tierra-firme del Mar Oceano. 4 vols. Madrid: Impr. de la Real Academia de la Historia.
- 1904 A Narrative of De Soto's Expedition Based on the Diary of Rodrigo Ranjel his Private Secretary. (See Bourne, Narratives . . ., 1904, Vol. 2, pp. 41-149.)
- Pandosy, Marie Charles
 1862 Grammar and Dictionary of the Yakima Language. London: Trubner & Co.
- Pond, Peter
 1908 Journal of Peter Pond. Collections of the State Historical Society of Wisconsin, Vol. 18, pp. 314-354. Madison: Democrat Printing Co.
- Powers, Stephen
 1877 Tribes of California. Contributions to North American Ethnology, Vol. 3, pp. 1-635. Washington: Government Printing Office.
- Quimby, George Irving
 1944 Aleutian Islanders, Eskimos of the North Pacific. Chicago Natural History Museum, Anthropology Leaflet No. 35. Chicago.
- Raleigh, Walter Alexander
 1927 The First Voyage Made to the Coasts of America. (See Hakluyt, The Principal Navigations . . ., 1927-28, Vol. 6, pp. 121-132.)
- Rasmussen, Knud Johan Victor
 1934 Adjustment of the Eskimos to the European Civilization. Proceedings of the Fifth Pacific Science Congress, Canada, 1933, Vol. 4, pp. 2889-2896. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Ray, Verne F.
 1938 Lower Chinook Ethnographic Notes. University of Washington Publications in Anthropology, Vol. 7, pp. 29-165, Seattle: University of Washington Press.
- 1942 Plateau. Anthropological Records, Vol. 8, pp. 99-262. Berkeley: University of California Press.

Orlando y Valdes, ...
1937-8

1937

Pandey, ...
1937

Pandey, ...
1938

Pandey, ...
1937

Pandey, ...
1937

Pandey, ...
1937

Pandey, ...
1937

Pandey, ...
1937

1937

Ross, Alexander

- 1904 Adventures of the First Settlers on the Oregon or Columbia River. [London, 1849.] (See Thwaites, Early Western Travels, Vol. 7.)

Russell, Frank

- 1903 Pima Annals. American Anthropologist, n.s., Vol. 5, p. 76-80. Lancaster: The New Era Printing Co.

Sagard, Gabriel

- 1939 The Long Journey to the Country of the Hurons. [Paris, 1632.] (George M. Wrong, ed.) The Publications of the Champlain Society, Vol. 25, Toronto: The Champlain Society.

Sapir, Edward

- 1907 Notes on the Takelma Indians of Southwestern Oregon. American Anthropologist, n.s., Vol. 9, pp. 251-275. Lancaster: The New Era Printing Co.
- 1909 Takelma Texts. University of Pennsylvania, Anthropological Publications of the University Museum, Vol. 2, pp. 1-267. Philadelphia.

Sapir, Edward and Leslie Spier

- 1943 Notes on the Culture of the Yana. Anthropological Records, Vol. 3, pp. 239-298. Berkeley: University of California Press.

Schoolcraft, Henry Rowe

- 1860 Archives of Aboriginal Knowledge. 6 vols. Philadelphia: J. B. Lippincott & Co.

Secoy, Frank Raymond

- 1953 Changing Military Patterns on the Great Plains. Monographs of the American Ethnological Society, No. 21. Locust Valley, N. Y.: J. J. Agustin.

Siebold, Philipp Franz von

- 1859 Geographical and Ethnographical Elucidations to the Discoveries of Maerten Gerrits Vries. Amsterdam: F. Muller.

Sjoberg, Andrée F.

- 1953 Lipan Apache Culture in Historical Perspective. Southwestern Journal of Anthropology, Vol. 9, pp. 76-98. Albuquerque: University of New Mexico Press.

Rose, Alexander

1906

Wassell, John

1903

Sagun, Edward

1909

Sagin, Edward

1907

1909

Sagin, Edward

1913

Scholarship, University

1900

Secoy, Frank

1903

Stebbins, William

1909

Stobbs, John

1913

Skinner, Alanson

- 1911 Notes on the Eastern Cree and Northern Salteaux.
Anthropological Papers of the American Museum
of Natural History, Vol. 9, pp. 1-177, New York.

Smith, John

- 1907 The Generall Historie of Virginia, New England
& The Summer Isles. [London, 1624.] 2 vols.
 London: J. Maclehose & Sons.

Speck, Frank Gouldsmith

- 1940 Penobscot Man. Philadelphia: University of Penn-
 sylvania Press; London: H. Milford, Oxford
 University Press.

Spier, Leslie

- 1928 Havasupai Ethnography. Anthropological Papers
 of the American Museum of Natural History, Vol.
 29, pp. 81-408.
 1930 Klamath Ethnography. University of California
 Publications in American Archaeology and Ethnol-
 ogy, Vol. 30, pp. 1-338. Berkeley: University
 of California Press.

Spier, Leslie and Edward Sapir

- 1930 Wishram Ethnography. University of Washington
 Publications in Anthropology, Vol. 3, pp. 151-
 300. Seattle: University of Washington Press.

Spinden, Herbert Joseph

- 1908 The Nez Percé Indians. Memoirs of the American
 Anthropological Association, Vol. 2, pp. 165-274.
 Lancaster: The New Era Printing Co.

Steward, Julien H.

- 1933 Ethnology of the Owens Valley Paiute. University
 of California Publications in American Archaeology
 and Ethnology, Vol. 33, pp. 233-350. Berkeley:
 University of California Press.

Stewart, Omer C.

- 1941 Northern Paiute. Anthropological Records, Vol.
 4, pp. 361-446. Berkeley: University of Calif-
 ornia Press.

Stewart, John
1911
of the
of the

Smith, John
1907
of the
of the

Spicer, John
1910
of the
of the

Spicer, John
1910
of the
of the

Spicer, John
1910
of the
of the

Spicer, John
1910
of the
of the

Spicer, John
1910
of the
of the

Spicer, John
1910
of the
of the

Spicer, John
1910
of the
of the

Swanton, John R.

- 1942 Source Material on the History and Ethnology of the Caddo Indians. United States Bureau of American Ethnology, Bulletin 132. Washington: Government Printing Office.
- 1946 The Indians of the Southeastern United States. United States Bureau of American Ethnology, Bulletin 137. Washington: Government Printing Office.

Teit, James Alexander

- 1900 The Thompson Indians of British Columbia. (Franz Boas, ed.) Memoirs of the American Museum of Natural History, Vol. 2, pp. 163-392. New York: The Knickerbocker Press.
- 1906 The Lillooet Indians. (Franz Boas, ed.) Memoirs of the American Museum of Natural History, Vol. 4, pp. 193-300. Leiden: E. J. Brill Ltd; New York: G. E. Stechert & Co.
- 1909 The Shuswap. (Franz Boas, ed.) Memoirs of the American Museum of Natural History, Vol. 4, pp. 443-789. Leiden: E. J. Brill, Ltd; New York: G. E. Stechert & Co.
- 1930 The Salishan Tribes of the Western Plateaus. (Franz Boas, ed.) U. S. Bureau of American Ethnology, forty-fifth Annual Report, 1927/28, pp. 23-396, Washington.

Tello, Antonio

- 1891 Libro Segundo de la Chronica Miscelanea. [MS, c.a. 1650-51.] Guadalajara: Impr. de la Republica Literaria.

Thomas, Alfred Barnaby

- 1932 Forgotten Frontiers. Norman: University of Oklahoma Press.
- 1935 After Coronado. Norman: University of Oklahoma Press.

Thomas, Cyrus

- 1907 Armor. United States Bureau of American Ethnology, Bulletin 30, Part 1, pp. 88-89. Washington: Government Printing Office.

Thompson, David

- 1916 David Thompson's Narrative of his Explorations in Western America, 1784-1812. Publications of the Champlain Society, Vol. 12. Toronto: The Champlain Society.

- Thordeman, Bengt
 1933 The Asiatic Splint Armor in Europe. Acta Archaeologia, Vol. 4, pp. 117-150. Kobenhavn: Levin & Munksgaard.
- Thwaites, Reuben Gold, ed.
 1896-1901 The Jesuit Relations and Allied Documents. 73 vols. Cleveland: The Burrows Brothers Co.
- Turney-High, Harry Holbert
 1941 Ethnography of the Kutenai. Memoirs of the American Anthropological Association, No. 56, Menasha.
- Tylor, E. B. and others
 1899 The North-Western Tribes of Canada. Report of the Sixty-Eighth Meeting of the British Association for the Advancement of Science, 1898, pp. 628-688. London: John Murray.
- Vimont, Barthelemy
 1898 Relation of Occurrences in New France in the Year 1642 and 1643. [Paris, 1644.] (See Thwaites, Jesuit Relations, Vol. 23, p. 255 to Vol. 25, p. 79.)
- Voegelin, Erminie W.
 1942 Northeast California. Anthropological Records, Vol. 7, pp. 47-251. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Wentzel, Willard F.
 1889 Letters to the Hon. Roderic McKenzie, 1807-1824. (See Masson, Les Bourgeois de la Compagnie . . ., Vol. 1, pp. 67-153.)
- Winship, George Parker
 1896 The Coronado Expedition, 1540-1542. Fourteenth Annual Report of the Bureau of American Ethnology, 1892-93, Part 1, pp. 339-637. Washington: Government Printing Office.
- Wissler, Clark
 1910 Material Culture of the Blackfoot Indians. Anthropological Papers of the American Museum of Natural History, Vol. 5, pp. 1-175, New York.

Thorpe, George
1933 The Art of the Book
Chicago, Ill.
2 volumes

Thwaites, Norman Gold
1896-1901 The Sea
73 vols.

Turner, H. H.
1911 The Turner
New York, N.Y.
Hawthorne

Tyler, E. B. and others
1899 The North American
New York, N.Y.
The American Book Co.

Vincent, Elizabeth
1898 The Vincent
New York, N.Y.
The American Book Co.

Voegelé, Ernest
1912 The Voegelé
New York, N.Y.
The American Book Co.

Wentzel, William F.
1899 The Wentzel
New York, N.Y.
The American Book Co.

Winship, George
1896 The Winship
New York, N.Y.
The American Book Co.

Wesley, Clark
1910 The Wesley
New York, N.Y.
The American Book Co.

Wood, William
1898 New Englands Prospect. [London, 1634.] Boston:
E. M. Boynton.

Worcester, D. E.
1944 The Spread of Spanish Horses in the Southwest.
New Mexico Historical Review, Vol. 19, pp. 225-
232. Santa Fe: The Historical Society of New
Mexico; Albuquerque: The University of New
Mexico Press.

Wood, William

1938

1934

1934

1934

1934

1934

1934

1934

CONFIDENTIAL

FORM

USA

1934

APPENDIX A

SOURCE MATERIAL ON NORTH AMERICAN PLATE ARMOR

Tribe or Location	Authorities and Notes
-------------------	-----------------------

1. St. Lawrence Island

Collins, Archeology of St. Lawrence Island..., 1937, pp. 188-89, 224-25, 326. Perforated bone plates found in archaeological activities.

Geist and Rainey, ...Excavations at Kukulik..., 1936, pp. 111, 142, 159, 193, 229. Perforated bone plates found in archaeological activities.

Hough, Primitive American Armor, 1895, p. 633.
"plates of iron and copper were found on St. Lawrence Island." (No source given)

Nelson, ...Eskimo About Bering Strait, 1899, p. 330.
"Plates of ivory for armor of this kind were seen."
(Fieldwork of 1877-1881.)

2. Diomed Island (Little?)

Bolles, A Preliminary Catalog..., 1889, p. 342. One armor specimen (apparently a single plate) listed in U. S. National Museum catalog for Diomed Island.

Hough, Primitive American Armor, 1895, n., p. 633;
Pl. 3. Specimen in U. S. National Museum, Cat. No. 64290. "Made of five imbricating rows of plates of walrus ivory of unequal size in the different rows, pierced with from 6 to 13 holes, lashed with seal-skin thongs. The vertical edges of the plates are chamfered...Two pointed plates cut from a tusk are lashed to one side, forming a clasp...Width extended, 49 inches; height, 24 inches." Offset in rows of plates forms an arm notch in one upper corner; there is no obvious accommodation for the other arm. Closure would be at back just behind one arm. Bottom edge is straight. (Collected by E. W. Nelson, fieldwork of 1877-1881.)

3. Cape Prince of Wales

Hough, Primitive American Armor, 1895, n., p. 632; Pl. 2, fig. 1. Specimen in U. S. National Museum, Cat.

NOV 1950

Source: [illegible]

Type of [illegible]

1. [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

2. [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

3. [illegible]

[illegible]

NOV 1950

3. Cape Prince of Wales (continued)

No. 153491. "Made of three rows of walrus ivory plates, averaging 1 inch in width and 6 inches in length. Each plate contains 6 holes, through which pass rawhide thongs, thus lashing the plates together. These plates are slightly imbricated... The lower row contains 43 plates, and the middle 38. The upper row consists of two sections; one containing 10 plates, protecting the breast, the other 8 plates, protecting the upper part of the back. A rawhide strip passes over the shoulders and supports the armor...Length when spread out, 44 inches." Has one full arm notch, one formed by offset after closure. Closure would be down one side, probably left. Strings with toggles are attached to both ends of the band. The single shoulder strap would pass diagonally from the back of one shoulder to the front of the other. The bottom and top of the band are straight except for the arm notches. (Collected by H. R. Thornton, residence of 1890-1893.)

Hough, Primitive American Armor, 1895, n., pp. 632-33; Pl. 2, fig. 2. Specimen in U. S. National Museum, Cat. No. 153492. "Fragment consisting of 9 iron plates...bound with three lashings of rawhide. The specimen was dug up in a bog near where the ivory armor on this plate was found [see citation immediately preceding this]. Length of each plate, 4-3/8 inches; width, 1-1/2 inches." Each plate bears six holes, placed in three pairs. Plates are imbricated. (Collected by H. R. Thornton, residence of 1890-93.)

Jenness, Archaeological Investigations in Bering Strait, 1928, p. 74. "Body armour in all the ruins." (Archaeological activities at Wales, Alaska.)

Rasmussen, Adjustment of the Eskimos..., p. 2893. A general statement that plate armor formerly occurred along the coast between Norton Sound and the Arctic Ocean.

4. Kotzebue Sound

Giddings, ...Arctic Woodland Culture..., 1952, pp. 91-2. Perforated antler plates were found in archaeological site. (Dendrochronology date of A.D. 1550 determined for armor-bearing horizon.)

APPENDIX B

SOURCE MATERIAL ON NORTH AMERICAN ROD ARMOR

Tribe or Location	Authorities and Notes
-------------------	-----------------------

1. Aleut

Dall, ...Remains of Later Pre-historic Man..., 1878, p. 18; Pl. 6. Specimen in U. S. National Museum, Cat. No. 17249. "Wooden body armor...composed of small round rods..., united by sinew cords, and with nicely carved wooden pieces about the arm holes.... It was fastened behind with two loops of sinew, into which wooden buttons were inserted. The small rods of which it is composed were about three-fourths of an inch in diameter, and painted red." (From a mummy found in a cave on Kagamil Island.)

Hough, Primitive American Armor, 1895, p. 638.
 "D'Orbigny says: 'Les armes défensives consistaient en une cotte de jones tressés qui leur couvrait tout le corps.'" (Quoting D'Orbigny, Voyages, p. 579.)

Hrdlička, The Aleutian and Commander Islands..., 1945, p. 132. "The Fox Islands Aleut made armor out of cylindrical sticks tied to each other with sinews, and worn under the outer garment." (Source given as Veniaminov, 1840, II, pp. 106-107.)

Ibid., p. 135. "Their armor, '...was made of cylindrically wrought sticks, about five cetvierte' long [1-1/4 arsin, or 35"] [brackets in original], bound together by sinew. They wore them under the outer garment, tied about the body, leaving free only the hands and feet'..." (Source given as Veniaminov, 1840, II.)

Ibid., p. 137. "...we found remnants of the wooden-rod armor in the same cave on Kagamil from which came the mummy and remains of armor described by Dall and Hough. In this case the rods were not painted."

2. Koniag

Dall, Alaskan Mummies, 1875, p. 439. "The Kaniagnut Eskimo..." dressed their mummies "sometimes with wooden armor, and carved masks." "We found many relics of this practice in the Unga Caves."

10/10/1917
10/10/1917
10/10/1917

I. Agent

Del. ...
p. 100 ...
Cat. ...
small ...
with ...
holes ...
ring ...
The ...
three ...
red ...
Tahiti

Hawaii ...
"Dion ...
on ...
for ...
Hawaii ...
p. 138 ...
cylindrical ...
and ...
as ...

Idia ...
early ...
early ...
by ...
fled ...
fact ...

Idia ...
red ...
the ...
empty ...
empty ...

2. Location

Calif. ...
Bak ...
water ...
refined ...

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

3. Tanaina, Upper Inlet, Tyonek and Kenai areas

Osgood, ...Ethnography of the Tanaina, 1937, p. 111.
 "a type of armor...by lashing birch rods in a vertical position by means of intertwining babiche at the top and bottom." (Fieldwork of 1931-34.)

4. Tlingit

Niblack, The Coast Indians..., 1890, Pl. 14, fig. 49.
 An illustration of armor of basically slat construction, but combined with a few rods. See this citation in Appendix C.

5. Tlingit, Chilkat

Drucker, ...Northwest Coast, 1950, p. 187. "Twined rod jacket" (Fieldwork, 1937.)

6. Tlingit, Sitka

Hough, Primitive American Armor, 1895, n., p. 636;
 Pl. 7, Pl. 8. Specimen in U. S. National Museum, Cat. No. 74437. An illustration of armor of basically slat construction, but combined with a few rods. See this citation in Appendix C.

Niblack, The Coast Indians..., 1890, p. 269; Pl. 13;
 Pl. 15. An illustration of armor which is a straight band of vertical rods twined with thread; no notches for the accommodation of the arms; no device to prevent band from slipping; top and bottom edges straight; tie strings at the middle of each end placed in such a manner as to suggest ends must have overlapped; closure could have been at any place on body; woven together with dark and white twine in alternate bands; composed of 74 rods about 2 feet long. (Collections and fieldwork, 1885-87.)

7. Tlingit, Taku

Hough, Primitive American Armor, 1895, n., p. 639;
 Pl. 13. Specimen in U. S. National Museum, Cat. No. 168158. A straight band of vertical rods twined with cordage; a notch in one upper corner to accommodate one arm; no device to prevent band from

Tribe or location

3.

4. Tribe

5.

6.

7.

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

7. Tlingit, Taku (continued)

slipping; top and bottom edges straight; tie strings at each end; closure possible down either side; rods held by alternate bands of weaving of woolen and sinew cord; four equidistant vertical bands of red paint; composed of 72 rods, the ends of which are hollowed out to form cup cavities.

8. Haida, Bucarelli Bay (Kaigani?)

La Pérouse, A Voyage Round the World..., 1807, Vol. 1, pp. 327-28. "In war these Indians wear cuirasses and shoulder pieces, made not unlike the whale-bone stays of European ladies. Very narrow slips of wood form the warp of these, and threads the woof, so that the whole is very flexible, and gives the arms sufficient liberty for handling their weapons.... From the girdle to the feet, they wear a kind of apron, of the same manufacture as their cuirasses: and lastly they have a fine skin hanging from the shoulder almost to the knee." (This is a direct quotation from an extract which La Perouse presents from the account of a voyage made in 1779 by the Spaniard Francisco Antonio Maurelle; the Indians referred to were encountered at "Bucarelli Bay" in that year; this description seems to convey the idea of rod armor, not slat armor.)

9. Haida, Massett

Drucker, ...Northwest Coast, 1950, p. 187. "Twined rod jacket" (Fieldwork, 1937.)

10. Tsimshian proper

Drucker, ...Northwest Coast, 1950, p. 187. "Twined rod jacket" (Fieldwork, 1937.)

11. Kwakiutl, Haihais

Drucker, ...Northwest Coast, 1950, p. 187. "Twined rod jacket" (Fieldwork, 1937.)

Table of Contents

I. Title Page

II. Introduction
The purpose of this study is to investigate the effects of the new tax law on the economy. The study is divided into two main parts: a theoretical analysis and an empirical study. The theoretical analysis is based on the work of Smith and Ricardo, while the empirical study is based on the work of Keynes and Marx.

III. Theoretical Analysis
The theoretical analysis is based on the work of Smith and Ricardo. Smith's theory of the division of labor and Ricardo's theory of comparative advantage are the main focus. The analysis shows that the new tax law will have a significant impact on the economy, particularly in the area of trade and commerce. The results of the analysis are presented in the following table:

Variable	Before Tax	After Tax
Output	100	120
Input	100	110
Profit	10	20

IV. Empirical Study
The empirical study is based on the work of Keynes and Marx. The study uses data from the years 1980 to 1990 to analyze the effects of the new tax law on the economy. The results of the study are presented in the following table:

Variable	1980	1990
GDP	100	120
Unemployment	10	8
Inflation	5	10

V. Conclusion
The results of the study show that the new tax law has had a significant impact on the economy. The theoretical analysis and the empirical study both show that the new tax law has led to an increase in output and a decrease in input, which has resulted in higher profits and lower unemployment.

VI. References
The following references were used in the study:
Smith, A. (1776). The Wealth of Nations.
Ricardo, D. (1817). Principles of Political Economy and Taxation.
Keynes, J.M. (1933). The General Theory of Employment, Interest and Money.
Marx, K. (1867). Das Kapital.

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

12. Bella Coola

Drucker, ...Northwest Coast, 1950, p. 187. "Twined rod jacket" (Fieldwork, 1937.)

13. Nootka

Curtis, E. S., ...North American Indian, 1907-30, Vol. 11, p. 70. "rod armor about their chests" (From an informant's description of a wolf fraternity initiation.)

Drucker, ...Nootkan Tribes, 1951, p. 335. "Informants disagreed as to whether armor was ever made of woven materials...a Hesquiat informant described a sort of rod armor, twined of hardwood twigs." (Fieldwork, 1935-36.)

14. Tahltan

Emmons, The Tahltan Indians, 1911, p. 116. "an armor of wooden rods bound together with a twining of twisted sinew and goat wool cord"

15. Slave: Lower Liard River

Wentzel, Letters..., 1889, p. 92. "From their neck down to their thighs, they wear" as part of their war dress "a mat made of willow switches; it covers the whole front and guards against arrows, as it is closematted for that purpose." (Refers to the period 1807-25.)

16. Sekani

Spier, Havasupai Ethnography, 1928, p. 258. Listed Sekani in his distribution of "slat and rod armor;" did not distinguish between the two types of armor.

17. Western Déné

Morice, The Western Dénés--Their Manners and Customs, 1889, p. 140. "They also wore a kind of armour or cuirass consisting of dried sticks of the same kind of wood [*Amelanchier alnifolia*], arranged in parallel order and kept together with babiche lines

CONTENTS

Tribe or Locality

12. Bahia de San Carlos

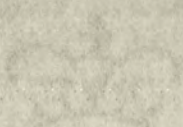
13. Huasteca

14. Tlaxcala

15. Oaxaca

16. Yucatan

17. Guatemala



Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

17. Western Dene (continued)

interlaced in several places." (Identifies Western Denes as Chilcotin, Carrier, and Nahanes, p. 113.)

18. Carrier

Morice, Notes...on the Western Denes, 1894, p. 117.
"wooden cuirass...composed...of dried rods...disposed in parallel order and held together by means of cariboo skin lines interlaced through the middle and near both edges...I have never seen any..."

18. Babine

Spier, Havasupai Ethnography, 1928, p. 258. Listed Babine in his distribution of "slat and rod armor;" did not distinguish between the two types of armor.

19. Chilcotin

Farrand, The Chilcotin, p. 647. "a sort of wooden armor was worn over the chest and back as far down as the waist. This protection, in shape like a sleeveless shirt, was made of tough sticks about an inch in diameter, fastened together with leather thongs." (Fieldwork, 1897.)

Morice, ...History...British Columbia, 1904, p. 17.
"armor, consisting of a device made of dried rods of hardened amelanchier wood" (From an informant's tale pertaining to about the year 1745.)

Ray, Plateau, 1942, p. 153. "Rod jacket, twined."
(Fieldwork, 1936-37.)

Teit, The Shuswap, 1909, p. 785. "Cuirasses of wood"
(Fieldwork mostly in 1900.)

20. Shuswap

Ray, Plateau, 1942, p. 153. "Rod jacket, twined."
(Fieldwork, 1936-37.)

Tribe of Indians

17. Western

18. Central

19. Eastern

20. Southern

21. Northern

22. Western

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

20. Shuswap (continued)

Teit, The Shuswap, 1909, p. 338. "Cuirasses...of rods were common, and made of rosewood." (Fieldwork, 1887-1904.)

21. Lillooet

Ray, Plateau, 1942, p. 153. "Rod jacket, twined." (Fieldwork, 1936-37)

Teit, The Lillooet..., 1906, p. 234. "Armor consisted of vests made of boards or rods...of vine-maple wood."

22. Thompson

Ray, Plateau, 1942, p. 153. "Rod jacket, twined." (For Lower Thompson; fieldwork, 1936-37.)

Teit, The Thompson Indians..., 1900, p. 265; fig. 254. "A vest of armor was made of narrow strips of wood... or of rods...and went entirely around the body. The strips of wood were placed vertically, and laced together with bark strings. This vest...was held over the shoulders by means of thongs." The illustrated example is a straight band with two, deep, rectangular, three-sided gaps in the upper edge for the arms; no shoulder thongs for suspending the vest from the shoulders were evidenced; five cords pass horizontally across the rods and appear to be twined, but may be passing through perforations; construction precludes any closure except down the front or the back.

23. Okanagan

Cline, et al., The Sinkaietk..., 1938, p. 55. "Both the southern and northern groups [of Southern Okanagan] had rod armor. This was made of blue wood sticks after the pattern of the moose hide armor [see Appendix E under Okanagan]. The sticks ran vertically and were probably twined together at short intervals with Indian hemp cords. The rods on the sides, naturally, reached only to the armpits. This armor was not so long as to prevent the wearer sitting down. The shoulder ties were fastened to the twining elements; the side straps to the rods. Both the

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

23. Okanagan (continued)

skin and the rod armor were put on over the head, indicating that the shoulder straps were permanently fastened." (Fieldwork, 1930.)

Teit, The Salishan Tribes...., 1930, p. 256. "Cuirasses of rods of wood...were in use among the Okanagan and Sanpoil..." (Fieldwork, 1904-09.)

24. Sanpoil

(See Teit under Okanagan above.)

25. Kalispel

Ray, Plateau, 1942, p. 153. "Rod jacket, twined." (Fieldwork, 1936-37.)

26. Coeur d'Alene

Ray, Plateau, 1942, p. 153. "Rod jacket, twined." (Fieldwork, 1936-37.)

Teit, The Salishan Tribes...., 1930, p. 117. "A short vest of wooden rods woven or fastened together with thongs or with Indian-hemp twine...reached from the shoulders to the hips, and had spaces for the arms. ...The outside was generally covered with dressed skin, which was ornamented with feathers and painted designs...." (Fieldwork, 1904.)

27. Flathead

Ray, Plateau, 1942, p. 153. "Rod jacket, twined." "Rods of twisted strips of elk rawhide." (Fieldwork, 1936-37.)

Teit, The Salishan Tribes...., 1930, p. 359. "Cuirasses of slats and rods of wood were probably not used." (Fieldwork, 1904-09.)

Turney-High, ...Kutenai, 1941, pp. 86-87. "It [Lower Kutenai armor] was of the rod type, and was made from the dog bones or ocean spray. Sticks of about a half centimeter's diameter were cut and seasoned.

Time of location

22. Oklahoma

23. Canada

24. California

25. Oregon

26. Kansas

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

27. Flathead (continued)

The length...depended on the height of the wearer. The proper number of sticks was laid parallel in a row and tightly bound at their upper and lower ends with dog bane bark. They were then given many rows of such bark binding between the upper and lower ends. The more of these, the tighter the cuirass. The rows of binding should be at least three inches apart, while a two inch spacing was thought much better. If they were far apart, an arrow point could easily pierce the wearer between the rods of his cuirass. In this way a square of bound...rods was first made to form that element of the cuirass which would protect the chest. The square was modified by cutting a semi-circle from the middle of the top rods to accommodate the neck, while similar cuts were made at the top corners so that the mail would fit under the arms and come to the midpoint of the sides. A backpiece was made to correspond to the breast element. When worn, the two were lashed together at the sides. Strings of raw hide alone connected the chest and back elements of the mail at the shoulders. The tops of the shoulders were without protection, but the front, sides, and back were completely covered.

"Sleeves were similarly made to cover the upper arms. The lower arms were unprotected. The sleeves were flat pieces of rod mail lashed together under the arms and equipped with strings to make fast to the lashings of the cuirass.

"The length of the Cuirass was as great as possible, but short enough to allow the warrior to bend his legs comfortably." (Upper Kutenai did not use rod armor.)

29. Western Washington; Northwestern Oregon

Gibbs, Tribes of Western Washington..., 1877, p. 192.

"they have another kind of armor, which they occasionally wear in place of the leathern shirt. It is a species of corset formed of thin slips of hardwood, ingeniously laced together; but it does not cover so much of the body. Neither is any longer used in this Territory." (The tribes referred to in the title of this paper are those of Western Washington and Northwestern Oregon; those groups mentioned

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

29. Western Washington; Northwestern Oregon (continued)

up to this citation are the "Tsinuk," "Klikatat," "Tai-tin-apam," "Willopah" or "Kwalhioqua," "Kowlitz," "Tsihalis," "Makah," "Klallam," "Tsemakum," and "Niskwalli.")

30. Western Oregon; Northern California

Schoolcraft, Archives..., 1860, Vol. 3, p. 216.

"Some of these northern tribes wear for their dress, a jacket of mail...which covers them in front.... It is composed of thin parallel battens of very tough wood, woven together by a small cord; with arm-holes, and strings at the bottom corners, to fasten it around the waist." An illustration is printed with this statement. It depicts a strictly rectangular piece of armor which is only slightly higher than it is wide; although it is not clear, the rods are apparently placed vertically; at each of the upper two corners is attached an arm loop of cordage or leather, and at each of the lower two corners is attached a string for tying about the waist; the armor would cover only the front of the body like a large breast plate. This example of rod armor is unlike any other illustrated or fully described in the literature. (From a description by G. F. Emmons, based on information gained by him on a trip in 1841 through western Oregon and northern California; he passed through the country of the "Chinooks, Klatsops, Chickeeles, Kilamukes, Callapuyas, Umpquas, Rogues, or Rascally, Klamets, Shaste, Kinkla, Sacramento, and Tula or Tulara.")

31. Chinook

Franchère, Narrative of a Voyage..., 1904, p. 331.

"They have another kind of corslet, made like the corsets of our ladies, of splinters of hard wood interlaced with nettle twine. The warrior who wears this cuirass does not use the tunic of elk-skin..." (Observations, 1811-14.)

Ray, Lower Chinook..., 1938, p. 60. "a light armor of wooden rods, twined with nettle cord, was sometimes worn. The rods were short so that the covering amounted to scarcely more than a narrow jacket but

30.

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

31. Chinook (continued)

its wearer was left quite free for action." (Fieldwork, 1931-36.)

Ray, Plateau, 1942, p. 153. "Rod jacket, twined."
(Lower Chinook, fieldwork, 1936-37.)

Ross, ...First Settlers on the Oregon..., 1904, p. 104.
"a kind of vest, made of small round sticks of the size and shape of arrows, twelve inches long: they are laid side to side, and then sewed together, and fixed on the body like a waistcoat." (Observations, 1810-13.)

32. Tolowa

Drucker, ...Tolowa..., 1937, p. 238. "Some vague mention of rod armor." (Fieldwork, 1933-34.)

Klimek, ...California Indian Culture, 1935, Table 5.
"Rod-jacket armor twined." (Apparently from secondary sources.)

33. Takelma

Sapir, ...Takelma Indians..., 1907, p. 273. "armor... was composed of sticks of wood covered with two undressed hides of elk or buck sewn together and decorated, after the removal of the hair, with painted designs. The armor was without sleeves and reached only from the neck and below the arms down to the hips." (Fieldwork, 1906.)

34. Karok

Driver, Northwest California, 1939, p. 328. "Rod jacket, twined." (Fieldwork, 1935.)

Kroeber, ...Indians of California, 1925, Pl. 18. An illustration of a Karok man in rod armor. The armor covers the upper body and apparently encircles it; the height reached by the rods in the front suggests that there must be gaps in the upper edge to accommodate the arms; closure is by overlapping the ends of the band down the front; the upper and lower edges

TYPE OF MACHINE

31. CHINESE (continued)

32. JAPANESE

33. RUSSIAN

34. KOREAN

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

34. Karok (continued)

of the band appear to be straight, except for the probable arm gaps.

35. Yurok

Driver, Northwest California, 1939, p. 328. "Rod jacket, twined." (Fieldwork, 1935.)

36. Wiyot

Klimek, ...California Indian Culture, 1935, Table 5. "Rod-jacket armor twined." (Apparently from secondary sources.)

37. Hupa

Curtis, E. S., ...North American Indian, 1907-30, Vol. 13, p. 7. "The commoner type of armor was a corselet of small wooden rods arranged in two vertical tiers and held tightly together by iris-cord twining; it extended up around the neck and down below the waist." (Fieldwork, 1916-17.)

Driver, Northwest California, 1939, p. 328. "Rod jacket, twined." (Fieldwork, 1935.)

Hough, Primitive American Armor, 1895, n., p. 640; Pl. 15, fig. 1. Specimen in U. S. National Museum, Cat. No. 126909. "Made of 118 peeled rods, woven together with native twine, bound with buckskin on upper and lower edges and armholes, shoulder straps of leather; 6 horizontal stripes of red cord cross the front of the coat....Width, 41 inches; height, 21 inches." Has two rectangular notches in the upper edge for the arms; edge between the arm cuts is raised to provide protection for the back of the shoulders and neck; lower edge is straight; straps close the arm cuts for suspension from the shoulders; closure would be by overlapping the ends down the front; tie strings placed for overlap; single tier of rods; edges and arm notches trimmed with leather. (Collected by Lt. Ray in 1885.)

Mason, The Ray Collection..., 1889, p. 230; fig. 106. This refers to the same specimen recorded above under

Types of location

34. Ranch location

35. Ranch

36. Wagon

37. Maps

38. Driver, wagon

39. House

40. Ranch

41. Ranch

42. Ranch

43. Ranch

44. Ranch

45. Ranch

46. Ranch

47. Ranch

48. Ranch

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

37. Hupa (continued)

Hough. "made of wattles and twine, woven and bound with buckskin....This is worn in battle to protect the body; it is tied across the breast from left to right. The red lines denote the number of enemies slain or captives taken, also the rank of the wearer."

38. Chilula

Driver, Northwest California, 1939, p. 328. "Rod jacket, twined." p. 391, "protruded slightly above shoulders with openings for arms and down between legs like baseball catcher's body pad; rods twined with buckskin-thong weft. Jacket 1-piece, laced up back." (Fieldwork, 1935.)

39. Modoc

Voegelin, Northeast California, 1942, p. 73. "Rod jacket." (Fieldwork, 1936.)

40. Shasta

Curtis, E. S., ...North American Indian, 1907-30, Vol. 13, p. 108. "corselet of...a double thickness of service-berry rods held together by cord twining." (Fieldwork, 1916-17.)

Dixon, The Shasta, 1907, p. 438. "stick armor...made of round rods of some hardwood...fastened together by twined cords..." (Fieldwork, 1900-04.)

Holt, Shasta Ethnography, 1946, p. 313. "stick... armor...used." (Fieldwork, 1937.)

Hough, Primitive American Armor, 1895, n., p. 640; Pl. 14. Specimen in U. S. National Museum, Cat. No. 2928. "Made of 74 strips of wood formed by splitting branches, woven with native cord of wild hemp. The checkered portion in black is woven with cord made from human hair. Short rods are worked in below the armpits. All the rods are split at either end, the finishing cords drawn into the split to secure the weaving. In addition the armor is bound on the upper and lower edges with skin sewed with sinew. The

Type or Location

37. Hiss (Hiss)

38. Oshika

39. Hoban

40. Shoria

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

40. Shasta (continued)

shoulder straps are of otter (?) fur. The surface of the armor shows 4 horizontal bands of red paint. Width, 38 inches; height, 30 inches." Two arm notches; upper edge between arm notches slightly raised; bottom edge straight; shoulder straps close arm gaps; single tier of rods; closure down the front.

Kroeber, ...Indians of California, 1925, p. 298. "rod armor similar to that of the Hupa and Yurok."

Voegelin, Northeast California, 1942, p. 73. "Rod jacket." (For both Eastern and Western Shasta; Fieldwork, 1936.)

41. Achomawi

Curtis, ...North American Indian, 1907-30, Vol. 13, p. 142. "armor...a vest of perpendicular service-berry rods held together by hemp twining..." (Fieldwork, 1916-17.)

Kroeber, ...Indians of California, 1935, p. 310. "waistcoat armor of slender sticks wrapped together."

Voegelin, Northeast California, 1942, p. 73. "Rod jacket." (For both Eastern and Western Achomawi; fieldwork, 1936.)

42. Atsugewi

Garth, Atsugewi Ethnography, 1953, p. 154. "rod armor" of "service withes twined together with buckskin string...high enough to come to the neck under the chin and extended two or three inches below the belt." n., p. 154, "went all the way around the body, was tied in back and was held up by two buckskin shoulder straps." (Fieldwork, 1938-39.)

Voegelin, Northeast California, 1942, p. 73. "Rod jacket." (Fieldwork, 1936.)

43. Maidu

Curtis, ...North American Indian, 1907-30, Vol. 14, p. 110. "the hill tribes" used "a vest of round,

... of the arrow above it, but the arrow is not
... 38 inches; height, 5 feet 10 inches; weight, 150
... between the two arms, the upper arm is 18 inches
... 38 inches; height, 5 feet 10 inches; weight, 150
... 38 inches; height, 5 feet 10 inches; weight, 150

Knob, ... Indians of California, ...
... similar to that of the ...

Vogel, ... Indians of California, ...
... (For both ...)
... (Fieldwork, 1936.)

11. Ashmawi

... North American ...
... "Arrow ..."
... berry rods held together ...
... (Fieldwork, 1936-37.)

Knob, ... Indians of California, ...
... "Waistcoat arrow of ..."

Vogel, ... Indians of California, ...
... "Arrow ..."
... (For both ...)
... (Fieldwork, 1936.)

12. Atungewi

... Atungewi ...
... of "service ..."
... "high enough to ..."
... and extended two ...
... "went all ..."
... that in back and was ...
... "Arrow ..."
... (Fieldwork, 1936-37.)

Vogel, ... Indians of California, ...
... "Arrow ..."
... (Fieldwork, 1936.)

13. Naidu

... North American ...
... "Arrow ..."
... (Fieldwork, 1936.)

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

43. Maidu (continued)

hardwood rods with cord twining." (Fieldwork, 1915-24.)

Klimek, ...California Indian Culture, 1935, Table 5. "Rod-jacket armor." (Listed for Northern Maidu; apparently from secondary sources.)

Kroeber, ...Indians of California, 1925, p. 400.

"The elk-hide coat was perhaps more characteristic of the valley; the waistcoat of rods, of the mountains. The wood for the latter was mountain mahogany. It is said to have had a high collar, behind which the warrior could shield his head. The rod armor is probably to be viewed as one of the many influences which the Achomawi have exerted on the northeastern Maidu."

Voegelin, Northeast California, 1942, p. 73. "Rod jacket." (Listed for the Mountain Maidu; fieldwork 1936.)

44. Wintu

Voegelin, Northeast California, 1942, p. 73. "Rod jacket." (Fieldwork, 1936.)

45. Wintun

Curtis, ...North American Indian, 1907-30, Vol. 14, p. 80. "The Waileka and Nomsus [Wintun] used rod corselets as well as elk-hide tunics...." p. 190, "In the north both rod armor and the elk-hide tunic were worn by the [Wintun] warriors." (Fieldwork, 1915-24.)

46. Hill Patwin

Gifford and Kroeber, Pomo, 1937, p. 142. "Rod jacket armor, twined." (Authors indicated informant was uncertain or did not understand; fieldwork, no date given.)

Klimek, ...California Indian Culture, 1935, Table 5. "Rod jacket armor twined." (Apparently from secondary sources.)

Type on Location

13. 1915 (continued)

1915-1

Klimok

Red (continued)

any (continued)

1915-2

Klimok

Red (continued)

any (continued)

1915-3

Klimok

Red (continued)

any (continued)

1915-4

Klimok

Red (continued)

any (continued)

1915-5

Klimok

Red (continued)

any (continued)

1915-6

Klimok

Red (continued)

any (continued)

1915-7

Klimok

Red (continued)

any (continued)

1915-8

Klimok

Red (continued)

any (continued)

1915-9

Klimok

Red (continued)

any (continued)

1915-10

Klimok

Red (continued)

any (continued)

1915-11

Klimok

Red (continued)

any (continued)

1915-12

Klimok

Red (continued)

any (continued)

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

46. Hill Patwin (continued)

Kroeber, The Patwin..., 1932, p. 299. "a waistcoat of rods twined with cord and filled with pitch. This last reached from hips to armpits, perhaps partly over the face." (Fieldwork, 1923-24.)

47. Pomo

Barrett, Material Aspects..., 1952, p. 190-91. "a type of double-rod armor...it completely covered the trunk, front and back...it was made of peeled rods....The rods were about the diameter of a lead pencil, very straight, and quite limber. The armor consisted of two layers of these rods, the outer layers running vertically; the inner layer, horizontally. According to some informants there was between these a layer of feathers. These layers of rods were held by very tightly woven cordage, and the top and bottom edges of the armor were bound with fringed buckskin." (Fieldwork, 1894-1952; one informant's information pertained to first quarter of Nineteenth Century.)

Ibid., Pl. 26. Two individuals, figured separately, wearing similar rod jackets; have straight upper and lower edges, although high back collar, if present, would not be evident since these are front views; there appear to be double notches for the arms; closure is not clear, but it is not down the front; upper and lower edges are trimmed with hide; length, from the chin to the hips; twining is apparently closed, non-spaced type.

Essene, Round Valley, 1942, p. 17. Elkhide armor "with rod bracing." (Northern Pomo; fieldwork, 1938.)

Gifford and Kroeber, Pomo, 1937, p. 142. "Rod jacket armor, twined." (For both Northern and Southern Pomo; fieldwork, no date given.)

48. Algonquin

Cartier, ...Second Voyage, 1924, p. 171. "d'amongt ledict fleuve, et qu'il y avoyt des agojuda, qui est à dire mauvaise...gens, qui estoient armés jusques sus les doidz, nous monstrant la façon de leurs

Tribe or families

16. 1111111

17. 1111111

18. 1111111

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

48. Algonquin (continued)

armatures, qui sont de cordes et...boys, lasseez et tissez ensemble...." Translation: "up that river [Ottawa] [brackets in original], where live Agojuda, which means bad people, who were armed to the teeth, showing us the style of their armor, which is made with cords and wood, laced and plaited together." (See footnote 24, p. 103 for a different rendering of this source.)

This armor description was presented to Cartier in A.D. 1535 by the people of Hochelaga, an Iroquoian [Huron or Iroquois] town on the site of present-day Montreal. The river referred to in the passage above seems almost certainly to have been the Ottawa, for the inhabitants of Hochelaga, speaking of the same river, said of it that further up the St. Lawrence "along the mountains to the north, there is a large river, which comes from the west like the said river [St. Lawrence] [brackets in original]" (p. 169-70.) People resident up the Ottawa at this time are almost surely to have been Algonquin. Some other versions of Cartier's second voyage call these people Agouionda.

Vimont, Relation of...1642 and 1643, 1898, Vol. 24, p. 204. "plusieurs avoient des corcelets, piqués, & entrelassez de petits battons." Translation, p. 205, "many had corselets, stiched, and interlaced with small sticks." (Spoken of a war party of "upper Algonquins" formed in this year, 1642-43, at the Fort of Richelieu for action against the Iroquois.)

49. Huron

Boucher, Canada in the Seventeenth Century, 1883, p. 55. "The men work also at making canoes, armour and nets." (Original manuscript dated 1663; statement refers to both Huron and Iroquois proper.)

Champlain, Voyages and Discoveries..., 1929, Pl. 6, fig. E, facing p. 135. This is an illustration of a warrior dressed in armor consisting of several pieces. One piece is a breast covering of rectangular outline which reaches from just below the neck to the waist; it does not appear to pass clear

Table of Contents

18. Wisconsin 1891

Wisconsin, 1891. The first of the series of reports on the progress of the work of the Wisconsin Historical Society, for the year 1891, is now ready for publication. It contains a full and complete account of the work of the Society during the year, and is a valuable contribution to the history of the State.

The first of the series of reports on the progress of the work of the Wisconsin Historical Society, for the year 1891, is now ready for publication. It contains a full and complete account of the work of the Society during the year, and is a valuable contribution to the history of the State.

The first of the series of reports on the progress of the work of the Wisconsin Historical Society, for the year 1891, is now ready for publication. It contains a full and complete account of the work of the Society during the year, and is a valuable contribution to the history of the State.

19. History

History, 1891. The first of the series of reports on the progress of the work of the Wisconsin Historical Society, for the year 1891, is now ready for publication. It contains a full and complete account of the work of the Society during the year, and is a valuable contribution to the history of the State.

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

49. Huron (continued)

around the body; suspension is by two shoulder straps; construction appears to be long vertical elements, rods or slats, twined or otherwise fastened by cordage which passes horizontally. A kilt or skirt reaches from the waist to the knees and is of the same construction as the breast piece. The lower legs are encased in greaves of uncertain construction. A conical helmet or headgear is worn and appears to be of construction akin to that of the breast piece and kilt. On the back is suspended a large shield which reaches from the top of the head to the waist; it is rectangular in outline except for the upper edge which is convex; it appears to be constructed of several vertical sections or planks, the two on the lateral edges seeming to hinge to give the overall shield a concave-convex cross-section with the concave side to the back. (Champlain's explorations covered the period 1603-15.)

At the point in the text where this plate was originally inserted the author is speaking of the "Attigouautan tribe," one of the Huron clans which he describes as inhabiting the peninsula between the Georgian Bay and Lake Huron (pp. 121-22). During his discussion of these Huron he makes reference to each of the other three figures in the plate with the armor illustration, thus assuring us that they illustrate Huron culture. The armor figure is never mentioned but presumably, by context, it is Huron also.

Flannery, ...Coastal Algonquian Culture, 1939, pp. 75-6. "Huron and Iroquois, ...armor made of 'ortyes' [nettles] [brackets in original]." (Source given as Boucher, P., Histoire Veritable (1663), repr. Montreal, p. 43.)

Lalemant, Relation of...1641...1642, Vol. 23, p. 154. "vne armure sauvage, qui le couure de pied en tete." Translation, p. 155, "a set of armor, of savage fashion, which covers a man from his head to his feet." (Lalemant relates that this armor was demanded as part of an offering by a supernatural being that appeared in a vision to a Huron man in winter, 1642-43.)

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

49. Huron (continued)

Sagard, The Long Journey..., 1939, p. 154. "Ils portent aussi de certaines armures et cuirasses, qu'ils appellent Aquientor, sur leur dos, et contre les jambes, et autres parties du corps, pour se pouvoir defendre des coups de Flesches:...ces cuirasses sont faictes avec des baguettes blanches, coupées de mesure, et serrées l'une contre l'autre, tissues et entrelassées de cordelettes, fort durement et proprement." Translation: "They wear also a sort of armour and cuirass, which they call Aquientor, on their back and legs and other parts of the body to get protection from arrow-shots....These cuirasses are made of white rods cut to the same length and pressed against one another, sewn and interlaced with little cords, very tightly and neatly." (Sagard visited the Huron A.D. 1623-24.)

Thwaites, The Jesuit Relations..., 1896-1901, Vol. 13, p. 272. "Their cuirasses were also a tissue of wood, or of small reed-stems, cut in proportional lengths, crowded closely together, very neatly woven and enlaced with small cords made of deerskin. They had cuisses and braces...of the same material." (Source of quotation given as Lafitau, Moeurs des Sauvages, t. ii, p. 197; this work by Lafitau was published in 1724 and the above statement is likely to have been derived from printed sources; statement applies to natives of New France and probably more specifically to Huron and Iroquois, those groups with which Lafitau was most familiar.)

50. Iroquois

Boucher, Canada in the Seventeenth Century, 1883, p. 55. (See this citation under Huron.)

Champlain, ...Voyages of the Sieur de Champlain..., 1922-25, Book II, pp. 99-100. "bien qu'ils fessent armez d'armes tissues de fil de cotton, & de bois a l'espreue de leurs fleches." Translation: "they were provided with shields made of cotton thread woven together and wood, which were proof against their arrows." (This statement refers to the Iroquois engaged by Champlain in battle at Lake Champlain, A.D. 1609; it is felt that the translation is

2000

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

50. Iroquois (continued)

inaccurate and that armor is meant, not "shields." For variations on this Champlain source see under this same Iroquois heading Flannery, citing Champlain; Flannery, citing Potherie; Lescarbot.)

Charlevoix, Journal...., 1923, Vol. 1, p. 320. "Most had no defensive weapon; but when they attacked any entrenchment, they covered their whole body with small light boards. Some have a sort of cuirass, or breast plate, of small pliable rings very neatly worked. They had even formerly a kind of mail for the arms and thighs made of the same materials. But as this kind of armour was found not to be proof against fire arms, they have renounced them, without putting anything in their place." (From a letter dated A.D. 1721; this statement was made on the subject of Canadian Indian warfare in general but seemingly, by context, was directed toward Iroquois more specifically; the information may have been derived from printed sources. The body covering of "light boards" very likely was the plank shield so common in the Northeast; the "rings" referred to may represent an error in translation or in the original, with the idea of rods having been intended.)

Flannery, ...Coastal Algonquian Culture, 1939, pp. 75-6. (citing Boucher; see Flannery under Huron.)

Ibid., p. 76. "Iroquois, Champlain (1609),...armor of cotton thread and wood." (Source given as Champlain, Oeuvres, ed. Laverdiere, 2nd ed., 3v., Quebec, 1870, p. 343 [no volume given].)

Lescarbot, The History of New France, 1907-14, Vol. 3, p. 307. "ni les armes tissues de fil de coton, ni les pavois de leurs Capitaines ne les avoient garantis d'une si prompte mort." Translation, p. 13: "neither their coats of woven cotton nor the shields of their captains had protected them from so sudden a death." (Refers to Champlain's battle with the Iroquois at Lake Champlain in 1609. Although citation is from a reprint of the third edition, 1618, of Lescarbot, the first edition appeared in 1609, the same year as Champlain's battle; Champlain's own account appeared in 1613.)

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

50. Iroquois (continued)

Thwaites, The Jesuit Relations..., 1896-1901, Vol. 13, p. 272. (See Thwaites under Huron.)

51. Delaware (New Sweden)

Lindeström, Geographia Americae..., 1925, p. 197.
 "helmets made of hard wooden pins and strong wood, that no arrow can go through them." p. 206, "they use helmets which are made of sticks and wood, so strong that no quarry is able to go through it."
 (Based on notes made in New Sweden during a residence from 1654-56; although not clear, this suggests rod construction and possible familiarity with rod body armor.)

52. Roanoke (Virginia)

Harriot, A Briefe and True Report..., 1903, signature E, reverse. "neither haue they any thing to defend themselves but targets made of barks; and some armours made of stickes wickered together with thread."
 (Statement refers to the time between the founding of Roanoke Colony, 1585, and the publishing of Harriot's report, 1588.)

Raleigh, The First Voyage..., 1927, p. 130. "wooden breastplates for their defence." (Recorded for the natives of Roanoke Island by Amadas and Barlowe on their visit of 1584; may be a reference to the wooden rod armor recorded by Harriot less than four years later.)

53. Lower Savannah River (Talimeco, province of Cofitachequi)

Oviedo y Valdés, Historia General y Natural..., 1851-55, Vol. 1, p. 561. "En la mezquita ó casa de oración de Talimeco, avia pechos, como de corselets y capaçetes hechos de cueros de vacas crudos y pelados, y de lo mismo muy buenas rodellas." (For translation and notes see the next citation.)

Oviedo y Valdés, A Narrative of De Soto's Expedition..., 1904, p. 101. "In the mosque or house of worship, of Talimeco there were breastplates like corselets and head-pieces made of rawhide, the hair stripped

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

53. Lower Savannah River (Talimeco, province of Cofitachequi)
(continued)

off: and also very good shields." (Bourne's translation of the above statement from Oviedo y Valdés.)

Oviedo y Valdés' version of the De Soto expedition is based on the diary of Rodrigo Ranjel, private secretary to De Soto, and is generally considered to be the most accurate authority on the expedition. The above statement refers to the visit the expedition made in 1540 to the village of "Talimeco" in the province of "Cofitachequi," located on the Lower Savannah River. By comparing the breastplates with European corselets, it does seem to imply that they were something more than just simple breastplates. The statement does not make it clear if the breastplates were of rawhide as were the headpieces. However, the Garcilaso de la Vega version gives an account of the same religious building and others surrounding it and noted that there were found cane or rod shields as well as hide shields. The hide shields were stated to have been imported from other lands. Thus, there is a possibility that the breastplates were apparently of the same construction as the locally made cane shields.

54. Mosquito (Honduras)

Bancroft, ...Native Races..., 1875-76, Vol. 1, p. 723.

"Armor is made of plaited reeds covered with tiger-skins, and ornamented with feathers; besides which the northern Mosquitos employ a breastplate of twisted cotton, like that of the Mexicans." (Author does not make his source clear as he gives numerous sources under a footnote for this paragraph; this reed armor may not have been similar to the rod armor of the eastern United States.)

23. Lower Savannah River (continued)

Location of the above stations and the

Station is based on the following information:
Private secretary to the expedition
offered to be the only one to accompany
the expedition. The above information
the expedition was the only one to
"meo" in the province of the
the Lower Savannah River.
places with the expedition.
it that they were the only ones to
the expedition. The above information
it the expedition was the only one to
places. However, the above information
gives an account of the expedition
states surrounding the expedition.
came to the expedition.
side which were the only ones to
other lands. The above information
places were the only ones to
the expedition.

24. Monticello (Henderson)

Barro Colorado, ...
"Archer is made of ...
skins, and surrounded by ...
the northern ...
cotton, like that of ...
not make his ...
sources under ...
red ...
error of the ...

APPENDIX C

SOURCE MATERIAL ON NORTH AMERICAN SLAT ARMOR

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

1. Tanaina; Middle Cook Inlet

Osgood, Tanaina Culture, 1933, p. 704. "armor made of slats or birch wood held flexibly in position by cords of babiche." (Fieldwork, 1931.)

2. Tanaina: Upper Cook Inlet

Osgood, Tanaina Culture, 1933, p. 704. (Identical statement as appears above for Tanaina of Middle Cook Inlet.)

3. Prince William Sound (Eskimo)

Cook, A Voyage to the Pacific Ocean...., 1785, Vol. 2, p. 372. "For defensive armour they have a kind of jacket, or coat of mail, made of thin laths, bound together with sinews, which makes it quite flexibleIt only covers the trunk of the body, and may not be improperly compared to a woman's stays." (Observed in 1778.)

4. Tlingit

Niblack, The Coast Indians...., 1890, p. 269. "laths or broader flat strips of wood,...woven with twine."

Ibid., Pl. 14, fig. 49. "Made of slats of wood fastened together by twine woven around and between them." This is an illustration of a waist length vest of armor; composed of two basic sections, one for the front of the body, one for the back; each section is made primarily of slats, but the lateral edges of each section terminate in a few rods so that when the vest is closed around the body there is a flexible series of rods down each side; the front and back sections are connected by thongs on the left side and closed by tie strings on the right side; each section consists of two tiers of slats, the upper tier short in height and abbreviated in length to protect front and rear of neck and shoulders, and to create spaces at the sides for the arms;

SOURCE

Tribe or Locality

1. Tanager

Color

2. Tanager

Color

3. Tanager

Color

4. Tanager

Color

5. Tanager

Color

6. Tanager

Color

7. Tanager

Color

8. Tanager

Color

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

4. Tlingit (continued)

the bottom edge is straight; two shoulder straps connect the upper edges of the two sections and appear to be fastened by splits and toggles. (This specimen strongly resembles the one listed below for the Sitka Tlingit under Hough, Pls. 7-8; source for this illustration given as Lisiansky, Voyage, p. 150, Pl. 1.)

5. Tlingit: Sitka

Hough, Primitive American Armor, 1895, n., p. 636;

Pl. 6. Specimen in U. S. National Museum, Cat. No. 9243, "Tlingit Indians, Sitka Alaska," Collected by Dr. A. H. Hoff. "Made of 32 slats of cedar and other wood woven together by fine weaving of fine sinew and other cord. A band of weaving of 3 inches width is carried along the front at the top and the weaving is continued downward in two places, meeting a band crossing the bottom and forming a geometric figure. The middle series of slats, 8 in number, extends below the other 4 inches, 3 of which are intact, while 2 on either side are united, forming a swallowtail and allowing the free bending of the thighs.

"The front and back are distinct, joined by elkskin cords at the sides. A section of short slats, 8 in number, is placed in front of the throat, and a similar row, 7 in number, protects the back of the neck. The armor is held in place by a broad band of elk skin over the right shoulder, and fastened on the left side by a loop and thong. A toggle on the left side of the collar in front was probably for suspension of the quiver. Height, 21-1/2 inches; width, 20 inches."

Ibid., n., p. 636; Pls. 7-8. Specimen in U. S. National Museum, Cat. No. 74437. "Made of slats and rods of hard wood 1-1/4 to 1-1/2 inches wide, five-sixteenths inch thick, woven together by means of fine sinew cord....The rods and slats are pared down to form channels for the reception of the cord weaving. The front and back portions are woven separately, being connected by cords of leather on the left side and on the right side by a loop and toggle....The neck

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

5. Tlingit: Sitka (continued)

portions are made up of short slats and sewn on by means of a strip of rawhide 1-1/4 inches wide. The shoulder supports are of very thick elk hide, the one on the right being fastened by a slash and toggle....height 19 inches." Front section has longer slats in the center thus causing the entire section to toe-in to form a triangular extension over the groin. (This example strongly resembles the specimen described above Tlingit under Niblack, Pl. 14, fig. 49, and the description of the latter will do very well for the present specimen except in regards to the toeing-in of the front piece.)

6. Tlingit: Nass

Niblack, The Coast Indians..., 1890, p. 269. In the construction of hide armor: "As a further security on the part which covers the breast they sometimes fix on the inside laths of wood." (Source given as Vancouver, Voyage, Vol. II, p. 339; these "laths" may not be slats, but rods instead.)

7. Shuswap

Teit, The Shuswap, 1909, p. 338. "Cuirasses made of slats were rare." (Fieldwork, 1887-1904.)

8. Lillooet

Teit, The Lillooet..., 1906, p. 234. "Armor consisted of vests made of boards or rods...of vine-maple wood."

9. Thompson

Teit, The Thompson Indians..., 1900, p. 265. "A coat of mail was sometimes made in the form of a cuirass. It consisted of four boards..., two for the front and two for the back, which reached from the collar-bone to the hip-bone. These boards were laced together with buckskin and the whole covered with thick elk-hide. A vest of armor was made of narrow strips of wood from half an inch to an inch in thickness...or of rods..." (For the complete description of this second-mentioned armor variation see Appendix B for Thompson under Teit.)

Tribe or Location

5. Thompson (continued)

...the ... of ...
... of a ... of ...
... of ...
... on the ...
... of ...
... to form a ...
... (This example ...)
... described above ...
... and the ...
... for the ...
... of the ...

6. Thompson (Mass)

... The ...
... of ...
... which ...
... on the ...
... Vol. ...
... but ...

7. Thompson

... The ...
... were ...

8. Lillooet

... The ...
... of ...

9. Thompson

... The ...
... of ...
... of ...
... for the ...
... to the ...
... with ...
... A ...
... wood ...
... of ...
... second-mentioned ...
... Thompson ...

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

9. Thompson (continued)

Ibid., fig. 253. This is an illustration representing the slat variation of the second type of armor mentioned in the preceding citation. It is a straight band of slats, each of which would be a few inches in width; there are two gaps for the arms in the upper edge, otherwise the upper and lower edges are straight; two shoulder straps close the arm gaps; tie strings on the end slats; slats are perforated at their edges and 5 cords, evenly spaced from top to bottom, pass through these holes horizontally across the slats--there is no twining; closure could have been down the back or down the front.

10. Okanagan

Teit, The Salishan Tribes...., 1930, p. 256. "Cuirasses of rods of wood and of slats of wood were in use among the Okanagan and Sanpoil." (Fieldwork, 1904-09.)

11. Sanpoil

(See Teit under Okanagan above.)

12. Klamath

Curtis, E. S., ...North American Indian, 1907-30, Vol. 13, p. 171. "For defense the Klamath warrior had a corselet of upright wooden slats with nettle-cord twining." p. 238: "Corselets of hardwood slats with nettle-bark twining were used by leading warriors." (Fieldwork, 1916-17.)

Hough, Primitive American Armor, 1895, n., p. 640; Pl. 15, fig. 2. Specimen in U. S. National Museum, Cat. No. 2094. "Made of $\frac{1}{4}$ oval rods of pine wood. The cord is of native hemp and cords made from sisal, the latter probably derived from ropes. The weaving is diversified by using cords colored red and yellow; bound with buckskin painted red; shoulder straps of buckskin; tying straps at the sides. Width, 38 inches; height, 21 inches." Two arm notches; upper edge between arm notches slightly raised; bottom edge straight; single tier of rods; rods appear to be

10. Oregon

11. Sanborn

12. Kansas

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

12. Klamath (continued)

slat-like; closure would be down the front; edges trimmed with leather.

Spier, Klamath Ethnography, 1930, p. 196. "Slat armor ... is the familiar waistcoat form; vertical wooden slats, two inches wide, split from any sort of tree, and twined with nettle cords. It is long front and back, but necessarily short under the arms, opens in the front, and ties over the shoulders with buckskin thongs." (Fieldwork, 1925-26.)

Voegelin, Northeast California, 1942, p. 73. "Rod jacket." p. 192, "of split serviceberry stalks, woven into form of tunic; tied together on right side, under armpit." (Probably is a reference to the slat type of armor described by Curtis, Hough and Spier above; fieldwork, 1936.)

13. Kato

Curtis, E. S., ... North American Indian, 1907-30, Vol. 14, p. 8. "Certain active men, say the Kato, were trained to personate bears, and those who proved the swiftest runners were provided with bear-skins cut to fit the body and stitched together. The skin was stiffened with a lining of slats of yew, so that arrows could not pierce it." (Fieldwork, 1915-24; it is questionable whether or not this should be included with slat armors.)

14. Pomo

Loeb, The Western Kuksu Cult, 1932, p. 13. "Armor (despised as cowardly by other Pomo) sometimes worn: 'flat sticks tied to chest.'" (Listed for Northern Pomo; fieldwork, 1930, but apparently summarization of other sources.)

Table of Contents

12. Appendix

13. Index

14. Glossary

APPENDIX D

OCCURRENCE OF ARMOR FOR THE ARMS AND LEGS
AND KILT ARMOR IN NORTH AMERICA

Tribe or Location	Authorities and Notes
<u>Armor for the Arms</u>	
1. Lillooet	Teit, <u>The Lillooet...</u> , 1906, p. 234-35.
2. Kutenai	Turney-High, ... <u>Kutenai</u> , 1941, p. 87. Were equipped with strings in order to make them fast to the lashings of the cuirass.
3. Iroquois	Charlevoix, <u>Journal...</u> , 1923, p. 320. "Rings" referred to may represent an error in translation or in the original, with the idea of rods having been intended; by context seems to refer to Iroquois.
4. Huron and Iroquois	Thwaites, <u>The Jesuit Relations...</u> , 1896-1901, Vol. 13, p. 272, citing Lafitau, <u>Moeurs des Sauvages</u> , Vol. 2, p. 197. Refers generally to natives of New France, but probably more specifically to Huron and Iroquois.
5. Tarascan	Hough, ... <u>Armor</u> , 1895, p. 645, citing Brinton, <u>American Race</u> .

Armor for the Legs

1. Tlingit
Hough, ...Armor, 1895, Pl. 10.
2. Kutenai
Turney-High, ...Kutenai, 1941, p. 87.

OCURRENCE OF A
AND KILL ALBINO

Tribe or location

Armor for the Arms

1. Illinois

Teil, The Illinois

2. Kubenai

Turney-High, ...

Isabing of the original

3. Iroquois

Garivolex, Journal

to my request an

4. Huron and Iroquois

Twisted, The Journal

p. 212, after battle

p. 197. Kater's

5. Tawasen

Hough, ...

Face

Armor for the Feet

1. Tlingit

Hough, ...

2. Kubenai

Turney-High, ...

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

3. Iroquois

Charlevoix, Journal..., 1923, p. 320. (See note under Iroquois--Charlevoix above.)

4. Huron

Sagard, The Long Journey..., 1939, p. 154.

Champlain, Voyages and Discoveries..., 1929, Pl. 6, fig. E.

5. Penobscot

Speck, Penobscot Man, 1940, p. 147.

6. Nahua

Bandelier, On the Art of War..., 1877, n. 59, p. 110. Seemingly illustrated in codices.

7. Tarascan

Hough, ...Armor, 1895, p. 645, citing Brinton, American Race.

Apron or Kilt Armor

1. Haida

La Pérouse, A Voyage..., 1807, Vol. 1, p. 328, citing Maurelle (voyage of 1779). Natives of Bucarelli Bay (Kaigani?).

2. Nootka

Curtis, The North American Indian, 1907-30, Vol. 11, p. 70.

3. Huron

Champlain, Voyages and Discoveries..., 1929, Pl. 6, fig. E. Context seems to indicate Huron.

4. Penobscot

Speck, Penobscot Man, 1940, p. 147.

UD
V
VBT
W

Tride on lacrosse

3. Lacrosse

4. Lacrosse

5. Lacrosse

6. Lacrosse

7. Lacrosse

8. Lacrosse

9. Lacrosse

10. Lacrosse

11. Lacrosse

12. Lacrosse

13. Lacrosse

14. Lacrosse

15. Lacrosse

16. Lacrosse

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

Full Body Armor Cited

1. Huron

Lalemant, Relation..., 1898, Vol. 23, p. 155.

Sagard, The Long Journey..., 1939, p. 154.

APPENDIX E

DISTRIBUTION OF TUNIC AND JACKET HIDE ARMOR
IN NORTH AMERICA

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

1. St. Lawrence Island

Cadzow, Objects from St. Lawrence Island, 1925, p. 124.
An ivory figurine showing hoop (?) armor found here;
may have been imported.

2. Tanaina: Tyonek area

Osgood, The Ethnology of the Tanaina, 1937, p. 111.
"skin armor made from a base of brown bear skin cut
and sewn like a parka over the whole of which is
added alternating coatings of spruce gum and sand."
(Fieldwork, 1931-34.)

3. Tanaina: Middle Inlet and Kenai area

Osgood, The Ethnology of the Tanaina, 1937, p. 111.
Above statement for Tyonek area pertains also to
Kenai area.

Osgood, Tanaina Culture, 1933, p. 704. Armor "in the
form of a grizzly bear parka covered with alternate
layers of spruce gum and sand." (Middle Inlet;
fieldwork, 1931.)

4. Tanaina: Lower Inlet and Kachemak Bay area

Osgood, Tanaina Culture, 1933, p. 704. Above state-
ment for Middle Inlet pertains to Lower Inlet also.

Osgood, The Ethnology of the Tanaina, 1937, p. 111.
Above statement for Tyonek and Kenai area pertains
also to Kachemak Bay area.

5. Tlingit

Hough, Primitive America Armor, 1895, Pls. 16-18.
U. S. National Museum specimens, Cat. Nos. 130587,
60239, 60240, and 130588. All are waist or hip
length forms; 130588 wraps around right side, leaving
left side open but all others wrap around left side,

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

5. Tlingit (continued)

leaving right side open; but all fasten over both shoulders, leaving a gap for the head; all have a hole for the arm on the wrapped side.

Niblack, The Coast Indians...., 1890, p. 268. "doublet or shirt...has an opening for the neck and one for the left arm; the right side is not sewed up" but "is secured by ties or toggles and straps." (Fieldwork, 1885-87.)

6. Tlingit: Chilkat

Hough, Primitive American Armor, 1895, Pl. 19, fig. 1. U. S. National Museum specimen, Cat. No. 46464. A waist length form, wrapped around left side, open down right; fastened over each shoulder leaving gap for head; hole for left arm.

7. Tlingit: Lituya Bay

Emmons, Native Account...., 1911a, p. 297. "heavy coats of hide." (From native account pertaining to La Perouse's visit in 1786.)

8. Tlingit: Sanyakwan

Drucker, Northwest Coast, 1950, p. 187. "Hide tunic (long)." (Fieldwork, 1937.)

9. Tlingit: Nass

Niblack, The Coast Indians...., 1890, pp. 268-70. Hide armor which had in the center "a hole sufficient to admit the head and left arm to pass through," worn "over the right shoulder and under the left arm," the "left side...sewed up, but the right side remains open." (Citing Vancouver, Voyage, Vol. 2, p. 339.)

10. Tlingit: Taku

Hough, Primitive American Armor, 1895, Pl. 19, fig. 2. U. S. National Museum specimen, Cat. No. 168159. Similar to example described above under Tlingit: Chilkat.

Type of letter

1. Friendly letter

2. Business letter
3. Formal letter
4. Informal letter

5. Personal letter

6. Letter of introduction
7. Letter of recommendation
8. Letter of invitation

9. Letter of request

10. Letter of complaint
11. Letter of apology
12. Letter of condolence
13. Letter of congratulation
14. Letter of sympathy

15. Letter of resignation

16. Letter of withdrawal
17. Letter of protest
18. Letter of objection

19. Letter of approval

20. Letter of disapproval
21. Letter of warning
22. Letter of reprimand

23. Letter of praise

24. Letter of criticism
25. Letter of suggestion
26. Letter of advice
27. Letter of encouragement

28. Letter of information

29. Letter of announcement
30. Letter of notice
31. Letter of invitation
32. Letter of request
33. Letter of refusal
34. Letter of agreement
35. Letter of disagreement
36. Letter of compromise
37. Letter of settlement
38. Letter of conclusion
39. Letter of closure
40. Letter of termination
41. Letter of termination
42. Letter of termination
43. Letter of termination
44. Letter of termination
45. Letter of termination
46. Letter of termination
47. Letter of termination
48. Letter of termination
49. Letter of termination
50. Letter of termination

Tribe or Location	Authorities and Notes
-------------------	-----------------------

11. Haida: Bucarelli Bay (Kaigani ?)

La Pérouse, A Voyage Round the World...., 1807, Vol. 1, p. 328, citing Maurelle. "a fine skin hanging from the shoulder almost to the knee" worn on top of red armor. (Year 1779.)

12. Haida: North Island

Newcombe, The Haida Indians, 1907, Vol. 1, p. 139.
 "'leather for armor'...was one of the items in greatest demand." (Citing Ingraham; year 1772.)

Haida: Massett

Drucker, Northwest Coast, 1950, p. 187. "Hide cuirass."
 (Fieldwork, 1937.)

Haida: Skedans

Drucker, Northwest Coast, 1950, p. 187. "Hide tunic (long)." (Fieldwork, 1937.)

13. Tsimshian proper: Hartley Bay

Drucker, Northwest Coast, 1950, p. 187. "Hide cuirass."
 (Fieldwork, 1937.)

14. Tsimshian: Gitksan

Drucker, Northwest Coast, 1950, p. 187. "Hide cuirass."
 (Fieldwork, 1937.)

15. Kwakiutl

Curtis, E. S., The North American Indians, 1907-30, Vol. 10, p. 18. "sleeveless jackets of tanned skin."
 (Fieldwork, 1910-14.)

16. Kwakiutl: Haisla

Drucker, Northwest Coast, 1950, p. 187. "Hide cuirass."
 (Fieldwork, 1937.)

Tribe or Location

11. Haida: Haida

La Jolla, A. V. ...
p. 328, ...
The ...
... (Year 1977)

12. Haida: Haida

Newcombe, ...
"..."
... (Year 1977)

Haida: Haida

Drucker, ...
(Pittman, 1977)

Haida: Haida

Drucker, ...
(Pittman, 1977)

13. Tsimshian: Tsimshian

Drucker, ...
(Pittman, 1977)

14. Tsimshian: Tsimshian

Drucker, ...
(Pittman, 1977)

15. Kwakwaka'wakw: Kwakwaka'wakw

Drucker, ...
Vol. 10, ...
(Pittman, 1977)

16. Kwakwaka'wakw: Kwakwaka'wakw

Drucker, ...
(Pittman, 1977)

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

17. Kwakiutl: Haihais

Drucker, Northwest Coast, 1950, p. 187. "Hide cuirass."
(Fieldwork, 1937.)

18. Kwakiutl: Bella Bella

Garfield, Tsimshian Clan and Society, 1939, p. 268.
"a thick, sleeveless leather jacket." (From a tale;
fieldwork, 1932-37.)

19. Kwakiutl: Kosquimo and Kwexa

Drucker, Northwest Coast, 1950, p. 187. "Hide cuirass."
(Fieldwork, 1937.)

20. Bella Coola

Drucker, Northwest Coast, 1950, p. 187. "Hide cuirass."
(Fieldwork, 1937.)

21. Salish: Klahuse

Barnett, Gulf of Georgia Salish, 1939, p. 247. "Elk-
skin gown, sleeveless." (Fieldwork, 1934-35.)

22. Salish: Squamish

Barnett, Gulf of Georgia Salish, 1939, p. 247. "Elk-
skin gown, sleeveless;" also "Elkskin vest." (Field-
work, 1934-35.)

23. Salish: Cowichan proper

Barnett, Gulf of Georgia Salish, 1939, p. 247. "Elk-
skin vest." (Fieldwork, 1934-35.)

24. Nootka

Cook, A Voyage..., 1785, Vol. 2, pp. 307-8. "a thick
leathern mantle doubled" from the "throat to the heels."
(Nootka Sound, year 1778.)

Drucker, Northwest Coast, 1950, p. 187. "Hide cuirass."
(Clayoquot; Fieldwork, 1936.)

Page 10 of 10

17. [illegible]

18. [illegible]

19. [illegible]

20. [illegible]

21. [illegible]

22. [illegible]

23. [illegible]

24. [illegible]

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

24. Nootka (continued)

Drucker, The Northern and Central Nootkan Tribes, 1951, pp. 103, 207. "elk-skin armor." (Fieldwork, 1935-36.)

Koppert, Contributions to Clayoquot Ethnology, 1930, p. 105. "the armor is worn after the manner of a modern vest, laced in the front with a thong." (Clayoquot.)

Meares, Voyages...., 1790, p. 254. "a thick leathern frock or doublet...reaches from the neck to the heels." (Nootka Sound, year 1788.)

25. Puget Sound

Eels, The Puget Sound Indians, 1887, p. 214. For armor they "formerly made shirts...from...skins." (c.a. 1887.)

26. Twana; Chemakum; and Klallam

Eels, The Twana, Chemakum, and Klallam Indians...., 1889, p. 633. "a kind of shirt made of dried buckskin," as armor. (c.a. 1889.)

27. Quinault

Spier, Havasupai Ethnography, 1928, p. 258. (From armor distribution list; information provided by Olson.)

28. Kutchin

Spier, Havasupai Ethnography, 1928, p. 258. (From armor distribution list, Loucheux.)

29. Hare

Spier, Havasupai Ethnography, 1928, p. 258. (From armor distribution list.)

30. Kaska: Upper Liard River

Honigsmann, The Kaska Indians...., 1954, p. 93. "bear skin armor in the form of a sleeveless coat that reached to the knees." (Fieldwork, 1944-45.)

17700 of 100000

21. 100000 100000

100000 100000

100000 100000
100000 100000
100000 100000

100000 100000
100000 100000
100000 100000

22. 100000 100000

100000 100000
100000 100000
100000 100000

23. 100000 100000

100000 100000
100000 100000
100000 100000

24. 100000 100000

100000 100000
100000 100000
100000 100000

25. 100000 100000

100000 100000
100000 100000
100000 100000

26. 100000 100000

100000 100000
100000 100000
100000 100000

27. 100000 100000

100000 100000
100000 100000
100000 100000

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

31. Tahltan

Emmons, The Tahltan Indians, 1911b, p. 116. "a defensive dress of hard tanned moose or goat skin."

Honigsmann, The Kaska Indians..., 1954, n., p. 98. "skin armor...of thick goat skin." (Citing Jenness, Indians of Canada, 1932, p. 372.)

32. Sekani

Spier, Havasupai Ethnography, 1928, p. 258. (From armor distribution list.)

33. Western Déné

Morice, The Western Dénés..., 1889, pp. 140-41. "a sleeveless tunic falling to the knees,...of moose skin,...soaked in water, then repeatedly rubbed on the sandy shores of a stream or lake and dried with the sand and small pebbles adhering thereto, after which it was thoroughly coated with a...glue, the principal ingredient of which was boiled isinglas obtained from the sturgeon," process repeated several times.

Morice, The Canadian Dénés..., 1906, p. 217. "armour... of stiffened skin."

34. Carrier

Morice, Notes Archaeological, 1894, p. 149. Statement almost identical to one above for Western Dene under Morice, 1889.

Ray, Plateau, 1942, p. 153. "Elkskin poncho or vest," as armor. (Lower Carrier; fieldwork, 1936-37.)

Babine

Spier, Havasupai Ethnography, 1928, p. 258. (From armor distribution list.)

35. Chilcotin

Morice, The History of the Northern Interior of British Columbia, 1904, p. 17. "a sleeveless, tunic-like

Prime of London
31. Edition

32. Edition

33. Edition

34. Edition

35. Edition

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

35. Chilcotin (continued)

cuirass of moose-skin covered with a coat of glued sand and gravel." (From a tale pertaining to ca. 1745.)

Teit, The Shuswap, 1909, p. 785. "thick elk-hide shirts" as armor. (Fieldwork, 1900.)

36. Lillooet

Ray, Plateau, 1942, p. 153. "Gown of elkskin," as armor. (Fieldwork, 1936-37.)

Teit, The Lillooet Indians, 1906, p. 234. "sleeveless tunics of double elk-skin reaching to the knee," as armor.

37. Shuswap

Teit, The Shuswap, 1909, p. 338. "Sleeveless tunics of double and treble elk-skins" as armor. (Fieldwork, 1887-1904.)

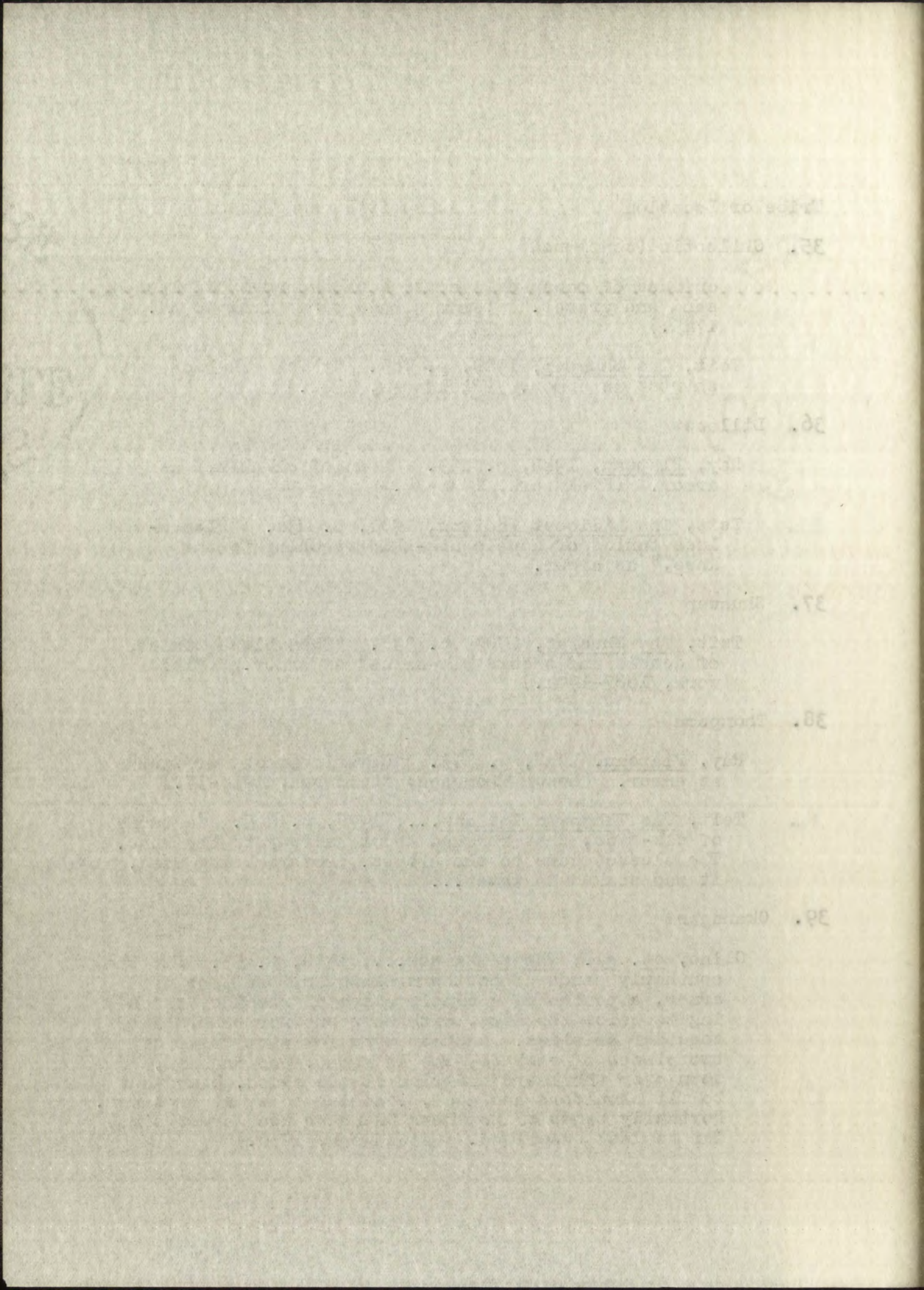
38. Thompson

Ray, Plateau, 1942, p. 153. "Elkskin poncho or vest" as armor. (Lower Thompson; fieldwork, 1936-37.)

Teit, The Thompson Indians..., 1900, p. 265. "a tunic of elk-hide, that reached about halfway to the knee. The sleeves came to the elbows. Before being used, it was soaked in water..."

39. Okanagan

Cline, et. al., The Sinkaietk..., 1938, p. 55. For the southerly bands of Southern Okanagan, one type of armor, a poncho of a single piece of rawhide, reaching to below the hips, with hole cut for head, laced together on sides. Another type for same group of two pieces of rawhide, one in front, one in back, sewn over shoulders and tied at the sides, being cut to fit shoulders and neck, reaching to waist or lower. Northerly bands of Southern Okanagan used armor similar to last described. (Fieldwork, 1930.)



Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

39. Okanagan (continued)

Teit, The Salishan Tribes...., 1930, p. 256. "Cuirasses ... of heavy hide....Some...were low, and only encircled the waist." (Okanagan and Sanpoil; fieldwork, 1904-09.)

40. Sanpoil

Teit, The Salishan Tribes...., 1930, p. 256. Statement by Teit, 1930, under Okanagan pertains.

41. Kalispel

Ray, Plateau, 1942, p. 153. "Elkskin poncho or vest" as armor. (Fieldwork, 1936-37.)

42. Flathead

Teit, The Salishan Tribes...., 1930, p. 359. "cuirasses of heavy elk skin and rawhide." (Fieldwork, 1904-09)

43. Coeur d'Alene

Teit, The Salishan Tribes...., 1930, p. 117. "A sleeveless shirt or tunic of heavy elk hide, reaching below the hips," if possible, "soaked in water before being used."

44. Nez Perce

Curtis, E. S., The North American Indian, 1907-30, Vol. 8, p. 45. "armor...of rawhide...protected the upper part of the body, had half-length sleeves, and was fastened at the front with thongs."

Spinden, The Nez Perce Indians, 1908, p. 228. "a sleeveless tunic of elk-hide which hung almost to the knees." (Fieldwork, 1908.)

45. Yakima

Pandossy, Grammar and Dictionary...., 1862, p. 38. A Yakima language dictionary listing of "armor, (cuir-ass) krem-na-was;" probably refers to hide armor.

39. ...

40. ...

41. ...

42. ...

43. ...

44. ...

45. ...

46. ...

47. ...

48. ...

49. ...

50. ...

51. ...

52. ...

53. ...

54. ...

55. ...

56. ...

57. ...

58. ...

59. ...

60. ...

61. ...

62. ...

63. ...

64. ...

65. ...

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

46. Klikitat

Ray, Plateau, 1942, p. 153. "Elkskin poncho or vest."
(Fieldwork, 1936-37.)

47. Western Washington; Northwestern Oregon

Gibbs, Tribes of Western Washington..., 1877, p. 192.
"elk skin shirt, remarkably thick, doubled...with
holes for the arms..., descends to the ankles."
(Citing Cox, Adventures..., 1832; probably Chinook.)

48. Chinook: Kathlamet

Boas, Kathlamet Texts, 1901, pp. 27, 28. Elkskin armor
mentioned in text of a myth.

49. Chinook: Lower

Ray, Lower Chinook..., 1938, p. 60. Armor "of double
thickness of elk skin covered the body down to the
ankles; arm holes were provided." (Fieldwork, 1931-
36.)

Ray, Plateau, 1942, p. 153. "Elkskin poncho or vest."
(Fieldwork, 1936-37.)

Ross, Adventures of the First Settlers..., 1904, p.
104. Armor "of elk-skin, dressed and worked to the
thickness of nearly half an inch...covers the whole
body, with an opening left on the right side."
(Travels, 1810-13.)

50. Alsea

Drucker, Contributions to Alsea Ethnography, 1939,
p. 87. "voluminous gowns of doubled elkskin" for
armor. (Fieldwork, 1933-34.)

51. Siuslaw

Barnett, Oregon Coast, 1937, p. 170. "Elkhide armor-
gown, sleeveless, 1 piece, hole for head." (Field-
work, 1934.)

16. *[Faint, illegible text]*

17. *[Faint, illegible text]*

18. *[Faint, illegible text]*

19. *[Faint, illegible text]*

20. *[Faint, illegible text]*

21. *[Faint, illegible text]*

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

52. Tututni

Barnett, Oregon Coast, 1937, p. 170. "Elkhide armor-gown, sleeveless, 1 piece, hole for head." (Fieldwork, 1934.)

Curtis, E. S., The North American Indian, 1907-30, Vol. 13, pp. 97, 228. "elk rawhide tunic." (Fieldwork, 1916-17.)

Galice Creek

Barnett, Oregon Coast, 1937, p. 170. Same statement as Barnett, 1937, under Tolowa.

Sixes River

Barnett, Oregon Coast, 1937, p. 170. Same statement as Barnett, 1937, under Tolowa.

53. Tolowa

Barnett, Oregon Coast, 1937, p. 170. "Elkhide armor-gown, sleeveless, 1 piece, hole for head." (Fieldwork, 1934.)

Curtis, E. S., The North American Indian, 1907-30, Vol. 13, pp. 97, 228. "elk rawhide tunic." (Fieldwork, 1916-17.)

Driver, Northwest California, 1939, pp. 328, 391. Armor of "Elkhide, no rods, ...double thickness, ... to knees or more" (p. 328). "Fine gravel glued to elkhide" (p. 391). (Fieldwork, 1935.)

Drucker, The Tolowa..., 1937, p. 87. "Armor, tunic-like affair of heavy elk hide; wet so arrows would slip off." (Fieldwork, 1933-34.)

54. Takelma

Sapir, Notes on the Takelma Indians..., 1907, p. 273. Rod armor was "covered with two undressed hides... sewn together." (Fieldwork, 1906.)



4120V2

CONFIDENTIAL

BOLD

USA

SHIP

There is no...

22. 1944

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

23. 1944

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

24. 1944

...

...

...

...

...

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

54. Takelma (continued)

Sapir, Takelma Texts, 1909, pp. 157, 255. "elk skin armor" (p. 157, from text of a myth). "armor of elk hide" (p. 255, from a vocabulary). (Fieldwork, 1906.)

55. Karok

Driver, Northwest California, 1939, p. 328. "Elkhide, no rods" (Upper and Lower Karok). "Double thickness...bearhide" (Lower Karok). (Fieldwork, 1935.)

56. Yurok

Driver, Northwest California, 1939, p. 328. "Elkhide, no rods,...to knees or more" (Martins Ferry). "Elkhide, no rods,...double thickness (Requa). (Fieldwork, 1935.)

57. Wiyot

Driver, Northwest California, 1939, pp. 328, 391. Wiyot of Eel River. "Elkhide, no rods,...double thickness,...to knees or more" (p. 328). "Hide fastened at back" (p. 391). (Fieldwork, 1939.)

58. Hupa

Curtis, E. S., The North American Indian, 1907-30, Vol. 13, p. 7. "elk-hide tunics of single or double thickness." (Fieldwork, 1916-17.)

Driver, Northwest California, 1939, p. 328. "Elkhide, no rods."

Hough, Primitive American Armor, 1895, Pl. 20. U. S. National Museum specimen, Cat. No. 126908. A full length hid tunic wrapped around left side, open on right, slit for left arm, no tailoring for shoulders and neck.

Mason, The Ray Collection..., 1889, p. 230, fig. 105. Same specimen as above under Hough. Adds that there is a "tie on the right shoulder, and it is also tied below the right arm."

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

58. (continued)

Chilula

Driver, Northwest California, 1939, p. 328. "Elk-hide, no rods." (Fieldwork, 1935.)

Mattole

Driver, Northwest California, 1939, p. 328. "Elk-hide, no rods." (Fieldwork, 1935.)

Nongatl

Driver, Northwest California, 1939, p. 328. "Elk-hide, no rods." (Fieldwork, 1935.)

Sinkyone

Driver, Northwest California, 1939, p. 328. "Elk-hide, no rods,...double thickness,...to knees or more." (Fieldwork, 1935.)

Nomland, Sinkyone..., 1935, p. 158. "Elk hide armor ...doubled at neck, raised up high in back; hung below knees, tied at neck, across chest with string. Cut out on shoulder, slit down right side." (Fieldwork, 1928-29.)

Lassik

Essene, Round Valley, 1942, p. 17. "Elkhide, no rods, ...to knees or more." (Fieldwork, 1938.)

Wailaki

Klimek, The Structure of California Indian Culture, 1935, Table 5. "Elkskin armor." (Secondary sources.)

Kroeber, Handbook..., 1925, p. 845. "Elkskin armor."

Kato

Driver, Northwest California, 1939, p. 328. "Elk-hide, no rods,...double thickness,...to knees or more." (Fieldwork, 1935.)

Tr. 100 on 1000 ft.

75. (cont.)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

58. Kato (continued)

Essene, Round Valley, 1942, p. 17. "Elkhide, no rods,...to knees or more." (Fieldwork, 1938.)

Loeb, The Western Kuksu Cult, 1932, p. 16. "double deer-hide aprons" as armor. (Fieldwork, 1930.)

59. Chimariko

Driver, Northwest California, 1939, p. 328. "Elk-hide, no rods,...double thickness,...to knees or more." (Fieldwork, 1935.)

60. Wintu

DuBois, Wintu..., 1935, p. 124. "Elkskin; whole hide used; split down belly, laced together in front; legs cut off and wearer's arms thrust through holes; neck of animal placed around wearer's neck; rump... hangs down to wearer's heels."

Voegelin, Northeast California, 1942, p. 73. "Hide tunic, no rods." (Fieldwork, 1936.)

61. Wintun

Curtis, E. S., The North American Indian, 1907-30, Vol. 14, p. 190. "elk-hide tunic" as armor. (Northern Wintun; fieldwork, 1915-24.)

Gifford and Kroeber, Pomo, 1937, p. 142. "Elk skin armor." (Hill Wintun)

Goldschmidt, Monlaki Ethnography, 1951, p. 425. Elk-hide armor "slipped over head, rested on the shoulders, and reached to the ankles." (Hill Wintun; fieldwork, 1936.)

62. Patwin

Gifford and Kroeber, Pomo, 1937, p. 142. "Elk-skin armor." "Informant uncertain, or did not understand." (Hill Patwin)

Klimek, The Structure of California Indian Culture, 1935, Table 5. "Elkskin armor." (River Patwin; secondary

THE STATE OF TEXAS,
COUNTY OF DALLAS.

I, the undersigned, a Notary Public in and for the State of Texas, do hereby certify that the foregoing is a true and correct copy of the original of the same, as the same appears from the records of the County of Dallas, State of Texas.

Given under my hand and seal of office, at the City of Dallas, this 1st day of January, 1901.

Notary Public in and for the State of Texas.

My Commission Expires the 1st day of January, 1902.

Witness my hand and seal of office, at the City of Dallas, this 1st day of January, 1901.

Notary Public in and for the State of Texas.

My Commission Expires the 1st day of January, 1902.

Witness my hand and seal of office, at the City of Dallas, this 1st day of January, 1901.

Notary Public in and for the State of Texas.

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

62. Patwin (continued)

sources.)

Kroeber, The Patwin..., 1932, p. 299. "Elk hide tunic from neck to knees, possibly with sleeves."
("authenticated only for the hills.")

63. Yuki

Curtis, E. S., The North American Indian, 1907-30, pp. 41. "untanned elk-skin tunics" as armor.
(Fieldwork, 1915-24.)

Foster, A Summary of Yuki Culture, 1941, p. 190.
"Elkskin armor." (Fieldwork, 1937.)

64. Pomo

Barrett, Material Aspects..., 1952, p. 191. "Bear Doctor's suit" served as a kind of armor. "The heavy skin of the suit...sometimes lined with a layer of soaproot fibers." (Fieldwork 1894-1952.)

Essene, Round Valley, 1942, p. 17. "Elkhide with rod bracing." (Northern Pomo; fieldwork, 1938.)

Gifford and Kroeber, Pomo, 1937, p. 142. "Elkskin armor" (Northern and Southern Pomo). "Deer-hide armor" (Eastern Pomo). "Bear-skin armor" (Northern, Southern, and Eastern Pomo).

65. Klamath

Spier, Klamath Ethnography, 1930, p. 196. "The tunic ...of elk hide, alternately of bear or deer skin, hangs to the calf, has holes for the arms, and is tied together down the sides." (Fieldwork, 1925-26.)

Voegelin, Northeast California, 1942, p. 73, 192.
"Hide tunic, no rods" (p. 73). "1-piece; no sleeves; 2 arm holes; tied together on 1 side and at top, over 1 shoulder" (p. 192). Eastern Achomawi informant said Klamath armor was made like an apron, lacking any backpiece (p. 192). (Fieldwork, 1936.)

Table of Contents

68. Index



69. Index

69. Index

69. Index

69. Index

69. Index

69. Index

69. Index

69. Index

69. Index

69. Index

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

66. Modoc

Kroeber, Handbook..., 1925, p. 332. "Armor...of doubled elk skins."

Voegelin, Northeast California, 1942, p. 73. "Hide tunic, no rods."

67. Shasta

Dixon, The Shasta, 1907, p. 438. "elk-hide...armor."
(Fieldwork, 1900-04.)

Kroeber, Handbook..., 1925, p. 298. "elk skin... armor."

Voegelin, Northeast California, 1942, p. 73. "Hide tunic, no rods." (Eastern Shasta; fieldwork, 1936.)

68. Achomawi

Curtis, The North American Indian, 1907-30, Vol. 13, p. 142. "two-ply tunic of elk-skin reaching below the knees and up around the back of the head."
(Fieldwork, 1916-17.)

Kroeber, Handbook..., 1925, p. 310. "long body armor of hard elk or bear hide."

Voegelin, Northeast California, 1942, p. 73. "Hide tunic, no rods." (Fieldwork, 1936.)

69. Atsugewi

Garth, Atsugewi Ethnography, 1953, p. 154. "gowns... of dried elk or bear skins...extended to the ankles or lower...worn over one shoulder so that it protected only the side turned toward enemy." (Fieldwork, 1953.)

Voegelin, Northeast California, 1942, p. 73. "Hide tunic, no rods." (Fieldwork, 1936.)

70. Yana

Gifford and Klimek, Yana, 1936, p. 82. "Elkskin armor" (Central Yana). "Armor a frontpiece of rods and

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

70. Yana (continued)

elkskin" (Northern Yana). (Fieldwork, 1934.)

Sapir and Spier, Notes on the Culture of the Yana, 1943, p. 269. "Elkhide armor...reached to hips, leaving arms unprotected." (Fieldwork, 1907.)

71. Maidu

Curtis, E. S., The North American Indian, 1907-30, Vol. 14, p. 110. "long, elk-hide shirt" as armor. (Valley Maidu; Fieldwork, 1915-24.)

Klimek, ...California Indian Culture, 1935, Table 5. "Elkskin armor." (Northern Maidu; secondary sources.)

Kroeber, Handbook..., 1925, pp. 400, 845. "The elk-hide coat...more characteristic of the valley" (p. 400). "Elkskin armor...found among the...northern valley Maidu (p. 845).

72. Paviotso

Lowie, Notes on Shoshonean Ethnography, 1924, p. 245. "an armor of stiffest animal hide, doubled so as to be hard and stiff. They wetted it first, then stiffened it by drying....The whole body was covered with it." (Pyramid Lake, Fallon, and Lovelock.)

73. Snake or Shoshoni

Coues, History of the Expedition..., 1893, p. 561. "armor something like a coat of mail, which is formed by a great many folds...of dressed antelope-skins, united by means of a mixture of glue and sand. With this they cover their own bodies and those of their horses." (Apparently Lemhi River Shoshoni; Lewis and Clark Journal, seen A.D. 1805.)

Secoy, Changing Military Patterns..., 1953, p. 47. "a Coat without sleeves six fold leather quilted, used by the Snake tribe to defend them." (Citing Cocking, An Adventurer from Hudson Bay, Burpee, ed., Proceedings and Transactions, Royal Society of Canada, 1908, p. 110; seen A.D. 1772.)

Table of Contents

10. Table of Contents

11. Table of Contents

12. Table of Contents

13. Table of Contents

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

74. Northern Plains

Ewers, The Horse..., 1955, p. 204. "the Cree and their enemies...wore 'coats of mail, made of many folds of drest leather.'" (Citing Umfreville, The Present State of Hudson's Bay..., London, 1790, pp. 188-189; seen c.a. A.D. 1775.)

75. Blackfoot

Ewers, The Horse..., 1955, pp. 203-04. "Wind River Shoshoni referred to the Blackfoot as 'Hard-clothes (armor) people.'" (Citing Shimkin, Wind River Shoshoni Ethnogeography, University of California--Anthropological Records, Vol. 5, p. 251.) "long shirts, reaching below the knees, made of three thicknesses of buckskin" (Blackfoot informant).

Secoy, Changing Military Patterns..., 1953, p. 47. "'Jackets of Moose leather six fold, quilted, & without sleeves.'" (Citing Cocking, An Adventurer from Hudson Bay, Proceedings and Transactions, Royal Society of Canada, Burpee, ed., 1908, p. 111; seen A.D. 1772.)

Wissler, Material Culture of the Blackfoot Indians, 1910, p. 163. "buckskin shirts of two or more thicknesses" as armor (traditional).

76. Cree: Plains

Ewers, The Horse..., 1955, p. 204. "'coats of mail, made of many folds of drest leather.'" (Citing Umfreville, Present State of Hudson's Bay..., London, 1790, p. 188-189; seen c.a. A.D. 1775.)

77. Yankton

Pond, Journal..., 1908, p. 354. Armor "a Garment Like an Outside Vest with Sleeves that Cum Down to thare Elboes Made of Soft Skins and Several thicknesses." (Seen A.D. 1774-74.)

78. Cheyenne

Curtis, E. S., The North American Indian, 1907-30, Vol. 6, p. 157. "a shirt of mail...of two layers

74. *Phlox subulata* L.

75. *Phlox subulata* L.

76. *Phlox subulata* L.

77. *Phlox subulata* L.

78. *Phlox subulata* L.

79. *Phlox subulata* L.

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

78. Cheyenne (continued)

of deerskin separated by a layer of pebbles held in place by means of glue," before guns were common.

79. Pawnee

Hough, ...Armor, 1895, p. 646. "Mr. Dorsey informs methat there is reason to believe that the Pawni formerly employed a kind of hide cuirass and a defensive helmet."

80. "Padouca"

Fletcher and La Flesche, The Omaha Tribe, 1911, p. 79. Horse armor "was made of thick rawhide cut in round pieces and made to overlap likethe scales on a fish. Over the surface was sand held on by glue....Some of them ["Padouca"] had breastplates made like those on their horses." (From a Ponca tradition of an early Ponca battle with the "Padouca.")

Hough, ...Armor, 1895, p. 646. "Du Pratz states that the Padoucas (Comanches) 'cover their horses with dressed leather (probably bison hide) hanging down quite round...' it is perhaps permissible to infer that their riders were protected in the same way."

Margry, Mémoires et Documents..., 1879-88, Vol. 6, p. 446. "ils ont des peaux de boeuf passées exprès, dont ils se garnissent, en ils entourent les chevaux." (Extract from De Bourgmont, Relation du Voyage du Sieur De Bourgmont, [1724]; seen A.D. 1724.)

81. Wichita

Lewis, La Harpe's First Expedition..., 1924, p. 346. "These nations raise very good horses being unable to do without them either in war or hunting. They have saddles, bridles which are very well made and even wear breastplates of leather to protect their flesh." (Human or horse armor? Citing La Harpe's journal in Margry, Decouvertes et Etablissement des Francais....)

Twins or Associates

78. Unborn

79. Pawns

80. "Tobacco"

81. Wishes

Lewis, in Lewis

.....

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

82. Hasinai

Kellogg, Early Narratives...., 1917, p. 320. "body covering of several skins, one over the other" as armor. (Extract from Memoir on La Salle's Discoveries, by Tonty, 1678-1690, [1693]; seen A.D. 1690.)

Swanton, Source Material...., 1942, p. 189-90. "'For defensive arms they have...leather jackets (cuera).'" (Refers to the Hasinai confederacy and "'up to its borders'" ; extract from Morfi, Memories for the History of the Province of Texas; period A.D. 1673-1779.)

83. Southwest

Winship, The Coronado Expedition...., 1896, p. 548. "'leather jackets, which are made of cows' hide, colored'" as armor. (Extract from a letter of Mendoza to the King, 1540; Mendoza is direct quoting Melchior Diaz who solicited an account of the Pueblo country from various Indians about 150 leagues north of Culiacan, Sinaloa, Mexico; above citation pertained to a sedentary village people living to the north.)

84. Apache

Barreiro, Ojeada...., 1942, p. 311. "defensivas [armas] de cuera y chimal" (Apache of the Mexican province of New Mexico, c.a. A.D. 1832.)

Espinosa, Crusaders...., 1942, p. 151. "leather jackets" as armor (Probably eastern Apache since reference is to war junta of "Tewas, Tanos, Picuries and many Apaches" in A.D. 1693; citing Vargas' Journal.)

Russell, Pima Annals, 1903, p. 78. "rawhide armor" (Probably western Apache since reference is to Apache raid against Pima, A.D. 1836-37.)

85. Apache, Eastern or Lipan

Dunn, Apache Relations in Texas...., 1911, p. 222. "skin armor, painted variously blue, red, green, or white." (Citing Flores in documentary sources; period A.D. 1718-50.)

Types on Locusts

82. Nodular

83. Boudin

84. Lenticular

85. Angular

Tribe or Location	Authorities and Notes
-------------------	-----------------------

85. Apache, Eastern or Lipan (continued)

Ibid., p. 232. "armed with leather breastplates."
(Citing Bustillo, in documentary source; seen A.D. 1732.)

Secoy, Changing Military Patterns..., 1953, p. 13.
"leather armor for both horse and rider." (Citing French, 1851, Vol. 3, pp. 47-48.)

86. Apache: Mescalero

Gifford, Apache-Pueblo, 1940, pp. 32, 123. "Armor of hide" (p. 32). "six-ply buckskin" (p. 123). (Fieldwork, 1935.)

87. Apache: Gila

Thomas, Forgotten Frontiers, 1932, p. 217. "'A cuirass and its round covering for the hind quarters of a horse.'" (Human or horse armor? Extract from Diary of Captain Martinez..., 1780; campaign against Gila Apache, 1780.)

88. Apache: San Carlos

Gifford, Apache-Pueblo, 1940, pp. 32, 123. "Armor of hide" (p. 32.) "tunic, open at neck" (p. 123). (Fieldwork, 1935.)

89. Apache: Janos and others

Thomas, Forgotten Frontiers, 1932, p. 216. "Soldiers with leather armor" listed for "Janos," "San Elezario," "San Buenaventura," and "Carrizal." (From a list of troops, some locally recruited, for a campaign against Gila Apache; extract from Diary of Captain Martinez... 1780.)

90. Navajo

Franciscan Fathers, An Ethnologic Dictionary..., 1910, pp. 458-59. "so-called big shirt was made of four-ply buckskin glued with pitch."

Hill, Navaho Warfare, 1936, p. 9. "armor of four thicknesses of buckskin,...had sleeves which reached

Table on page 100

85.

86.

87.

88.

89.

90.



Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

90. Navajo (continued)

almost to the elbow,...fitted tightly around the neck and were laced across the chest with a series of thongs." Layers of skin were separated by layers of catus glue and leather cuttings, "then the shirt was quilted to insure its keeping its shape. Another type was made of eight buckskins. It was constructed...as the first but reached down to the knees, ...slit at the bottom both in front and behind, in order that...horse might be straddled." (Fieldwork, 1936.)

91. Havasupai

Spier, Havasupai Ethnography, 1928, pp. 249-50. Armor a shirt or smock fitting close around neck, hanging nearly to ground. Of 2 thicknesses buckskin, sewed but not glued together. (Fieldwork, 1918-21.)

92. Walapai

Kniffen, et al., Walapai..., 1935, p. 96. "Several layers of buckskin were worn as armor. These consisted of a front and a back piece tied together under the arms, leaving a head hole; a separate collar was tied around the neck."

93. Pueblos

Cushing, Pueblo Indians..., 1896, p. 848. "cuirasses of skin."

Espinosa, Crusaders..., 1942, p. 151. Statement under Espinosa for Apache (No. 84) pertains.

94. Hopi

Hill, Navaho Warfare, 1936, pp. 5-6. "Every Oraibi warrior had a buckskin tied over his left and under his right shoulder;" from a Navajo account of a raid on the Hopi; it may not be a reference to armor. (Fieldwork, 1936.)

Table of Contents

90. Verbal (1971)

91. Interview

92. Verbal

93. Pencil

94. Copy

95. Verbal

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

95. Zuni

Spier, Havasupai Ethnography, 1928, p. 258. From armor distribution list.

96. Keres

Gifford, Apache-Pueblo, 1940, pp. 32, 123. "armor of hide" (p. 32). "1 thickness buckskin" (p. 123). (Santa Ana; fieldwork 1935.)

97. Tewa

Espinosa, Crusaders..., 1942, p. 60. "leather jackets." (Inferred for Tesuque but not directly stated; citing Vargas Journal, Sept. 14, 1692.)

Ibid., p. 151. See the statement under Espinosa for Apache (No. 84.) (Tewas, Tanos, Picuries)

Gifford, Apache-Pueblo, 1940, pp. 32, 123. "armor of hide" (p. 32). "heavy buckskin or buffalo-hide" (p. 123). (San Ildefonso; fieldwork, 1935.)

Thomas, After Coronado, 1935, p. 93. "'From the pueblo of Nambé, ten, with blankets, leather jackets and guns.'" (From muster roll of Indian troops on Hurtado's campaign to the plains, dated 1715; citing documentary source.)

98. Tiwa

Espinosa, Crusaders..., 1942, p. 151. See this statement under Espinosa for Apache (No. 84.) (Picuries)

99. Seri

Kroeber, The Seri, 1931, p. 16. "Body armor, with sleeves and helmet...of hide, were worn." (Fieldwork, 1930.)

100. Cree, Eastern; Salteaux, Northern

Skinner, Notes on the Eastern Cree..., 1911, p. 78. Armor made of wood, bark, or hard leather which rested next to skin of wearer, covered with outer skin

95. 1945

96. 1946

97. 1947

98. 1948

99. 1949

100. 1950

101. 1951
102. 1952
103. 1953
104. 1954
105. 1955
106. 1956
107. 1957
108. 1958
109. 1959
110. 1960

Tribe or Location	Authorities and Notes
-------------------	-----------------------

100. Cree, Eastern; Salteaux, Northern (continued)

which was inflated; almost certainly does not belong in category of more western skin tunics and jackets. (Fieldwork, 1908-09.)

101. Iroquois, Mohawk

Wood, Nevv Englands Prospect, 1898, p. 61. "sea horse skinned and barked of trees, made by their Art as impenetratable it is thought as steele, wearing head peeces of the same." (Experience, A.D. 1629-33.)

102. Nahua

Beals, The Comparative Ethnology of Northern Mexico...., 1932, p. 116. "hide or tunic armor."

103. Mixtec

Beals, The Comparative Ethnology of Northern Mexico...., 1932, p. 116. "hide or tunic armor."

Joyce, Mexican Archaeology, 1920, p. 126. "The defensive armour of the Mixtec was of hide."

100
101
102

Table of Contents

100. Over

101. Table

102. Table

103. Table

100
101
102

APPENDIX F

DISTRIBUTION OF THE USE OF AN ADHESIVE WITH SAND OR GRAVEL
TO FORTIFY ARMOR IN NORTH AMERICA

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

1. Tanaina

Osgood, Tanaina Culture, 1933, p. 704. (Fieldwork, 1931.)

Osgood, The Ethnology of the Tanaina, 1937, p. 111. (Fieldwork, 1931-34.)

2. Sekani

Jenness, The Sekani Indians...., 1937, pp. 18, 37. (Fieldwork, 1924.)

3. Western Dene

Morice, The Western Denes...., 1889, pp. 140-41.

4. Carrier

Morice, Notes Archaeological...., 1894, p. 149.

5. Chilcotin

Morice, The History of the Northern Interior of British Columbia, 1904, p. 17. (From a tale pertaining to about A.D. 1745.)

6. Shuswap

Teit, The Shuswap, 1909, p. 538. (Fieldwork, 1887-1904.)

7. Okanagan

Teit, The Salishan Tribes...., 1930, p. 256. (Fieldwork, 1904-09.)

8. Sanpoil

Teit, The Salishan Tribes...., 1930, p. 256. (Fieldwork, 1904-09.)

— — — — —

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

9. Tolowa

Driver, Northwest California, 1939, p. 391. (Field-work, 1935.)

10. Shoshoni; Lemhi River

Coues, ...Lewis and Clark, 1893, Vol. 2, p. 561. (from journal of Lewis and Clark; seen A.D. 1805.)

11. Cheyenne

Curtis, E. S., The North American Indian, 1907-30, Vol. 6, p. 157.

12. "Padouca"

Fletcher and La Flesche, The Omaha Tribe, 1911, p. 79. (From a Ponca tradition of an early contact with the "Padouca.")

13. Navajo

Franciscan Fathers, An Ethnologic Dictionary..., 1910, p. 458. "four-ply buckskin glued with pitch."

Hill, Navaho Warfare, 1936, p. 9. Multiple-ply buckskin separated by layers of glue and leather cuttings. (Fieldwork, 1933.)

14. Havasupai

Spier. Personal communication. Probable but not certain.

15. Walapai

Spier. Personal communication. Probable but not certain.

Tribe of ...

...

...

10. ...

11. ...

12. ...

13. ...

14. ...

15. ...

...

APPENDIX G

SOURCE MATERIAL ON WIDE BELT ARMOR IN NORTH AMERICA

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

1. Nootka

Drucker, ...Nootkan Tribes, 1951, p. 207. "wide belt, usually of twisted cedar bark, although it might be of hide" worn by shaman while curing disease; one shaman wore hid elkskin (jacket?) armor in curing. (Fieldwork, 1935-36.)

2. Okanagan

Teit, The Salishan Tribes...., 1930, p. 256. Some hide cuirasses "were low, and only encircled the waist." (Fieldwork, 1904-09.)

3. Sanpoil

Citation of Teit under Okanagan above pertains.

4. Coeur d'Alene

Ray, Plateau, 1942, p. 153. "Wide rawhide belt" as armor. (Fieldwork, 1936-37.)

5. Kutenai

Citation of Ray under Coeur d'Alene above pertains.

6. Klikitat

Ray, Plateau, 1942, p. 153. "Wide rawhide belt" as armor; somedoubt on part of Ray. (Fieldwork, 1936-37.)

7. Tillamook

Barnett, Oregon Coast, 1937, p. 170. "Wide rawhide belt for protection." (Fieldwork, 1934.)

8. Siuslaw

Citation of Barnett under Tillamook above pertains.

APPENDIX B
SOURCE MATERIAL ON WIDE AREA

Type of location

1. Necker

Necker, ... Necker Island, 1935-36.
usually of twisted coral
of "hills" with by human
shaman were his (Necker) (Necker)
(Necker, 1935-36.)

2. Okanagan

Necker, The Salishan Tribes, 1935-36.
"Necker" were low, by (Necker)
(Necker, 1935-36.)

3. Sanborn

Location of Necker under Okanagan

4. Coeur d'Alene

Necker, Plateau, 1935, p. 153.
Necker, Plateau, 1935-36.
error.

5. Kootenai

Location of Necker under Coeur d'Alene

6. Kootenai

Necker, Plateau, 1935, p. 153.
Necker, Plateau, 1935-36.
error; somewhat as with (Necker)
37.

7. Williams

Necker, Plateau, 1935, p. 153.
Necker, Plateau, 1935-36.
Necker for protection.

8. Shoshone

Location of Necker under Shoshone



Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

9. Galice Creek; Sixes River

Citation of Barnett under Tillamook above pertains to both these groups.

10. Chetco

Citation of Barnett under Tillamook above pertains.

11. Yuki

Powers, Tribes of California, 1877, p. 129. "wide elk-skin belt" as armor.

12. Mohave

Drucker, Yuman-Piman, 1941, p. 120. "Wide strip of hide etc. around belly" as armor. (Fieldwork, 1938.)

13. Walapai

Citation of Drucker under Mohave above pertains.

14. Maricopa

Drucker, Yuman-Piman, 1941, p. 120. "Rope wrapped around belly" as armor (fieldwork, 1938.) Cotton blanket wrapped around body in folds and wound with a lariat (citing Bartlett, Personal Narrative, New York, 1854, Vol. 2, p. 216.)

15. Papago

Citation of Drucker under Mohave above pertains.

Table on location

9. Galileo Creek

Station of

10. Orange

Station of

11. Yuni

Power, 1911-12

12. Hobbs

Dr. 1911-12

13. Watson

Station of

14. Harbison

Dr. 1911-12

Station of

15. Fargo

Station of



APPENDIX H

SOURCE MATERIAL ON THE CURTAIN SHIELD IN NORTH AMERICA

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

1. Carrier

Teit, The Shuswap, 1909, p. 539. "A cord fastened a blanket or leather covering under the right arm-pit, so it hung upon the left shoulder, and might be occasionally employed as a target." (Citing Alexander Mackenzie; seen A.D. 1793 among Carrier of Frazer River.)

2. Shuswap

Fraser, Journal..., 1889, p. 179. A shield "large enough to cover the whole body,...of splinters of wood like the ribs of stays, and neatly enclosed with twine made of hemp." (Seen A.D. 1808.)

Teit, The Shuswap, 1909, p. 538. "Long shields of double elk-hide were fastened with a thong around the neck. Sometimes...glued and rubbed with sand." (Fieldwork, 1887-1904.)

3. Thompson

Teit, The Thompson Indians..., 1900, p. 266. A shield of an "almost square piece of stiff elk-hide, sometimes double, long enough to cover most of the body, ...fastened around the neck or shoulder with a thong, and two loops...attached for the thumbs of both hands, by which means it was shifted around." (Fieldwork)

4. Kutenai

Ray, Plateau, 1942, p. 153. "Apron of elkskin,... covers exposed side only,...fastened around neck." (Fieldwork, 1936-37.)

5. Coeur d'Alene

Citation of Ray under Kutenai above pertains.

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

6. Modoc

Voegelin, Northeast California, 1942, p. 73. "Hide curtain as shield." (Fieldwork, 1936.)

7. Shasta

Holt, Shasta Ethnography, 1946, p. 313. Shield of whole elkhide "tied at the neck, ...protected left side, leaving the right arm free," maneuvered by left arm. (Fieldwork, 1937.)

Citation of Voegelin under Modoc above also pertains.

8. Wintu

Citation of Voegelin under Modoc above pertains.

9. Tolowa

Driver, Northwest California, 1939, p. 328. "Hide curtain held in teeth." (Fieldwork, 1935.)

10. Karok: Lower

Citation of Driver under Tolowa above pertains.

11. Yurok

Driver, Northwest California, 1939, p. 392. "Hide curtain sometimes hung from helmet to chest, with holes for eyes." (Fieldwork, 1935.)

12. Hupa; Chilula

Citation of Driver under Tolowa above pertains to both these groups.

13. Wailaki

Powers, Tribes of California, 1877, p. 129. Shields of stiff elkskin "wide enough to shield two or three men, ...worn on the back," warrior turns his back to screen himself from missiles.

1. The location

2. Name

3. Vegetation, soil, etc. (if possible, also the character of the soil)

4. Climate

5. Height, aspect, exposure, etc. (if possible, also the character of the soil)

6. Direction of vegetation, etc. (if possible, also the character of the soil)

7. Wind

8. Direction of vegetation, etc. (if possible, also the character of the soil)

9. Tides

10. Direction of vegetation, etc. (if possible, also the character of the soil)

11. Name of place

12. Direction of vegetation, etc. (if possible, also the character of the soil)

13. Name

14. Direction of vegetation, etc. (if possible, also the character of the soil)

15. Name of place

16. Direction of vegetation, etc. (if possible, also the character of the soil)

17. Name

18. Direction of vegetation, etc. (if possible, also the character of the soil)



Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

14. Atsugewi

Garth, Atsugewi Ethnography, 1953, p. 154. "gowns... of dried elk or bear skins...extended to the ankles or lower...worn over one shoulder so that it protected only the side turned toward enemy." (Curtain shield or tunic armor? Fieldwork, 1953.)

15. Havasupai

Spier, Havasupai Ethnography, 1928, p. 250. "heavy buckskins held out horizontally before body on a bow." (Fieldwork, 1918-21.)

16. Walapai

Drucker, Yuman-Piman, 1941, p. 120. "Curtain shield of hide" (Fieldwork, 1938.)

Kniffen, et al., Walapai..., 1935, p. 93. Buckskin hung over the arm, stick, or bow used as shield. (Fieldwork, 1929.)

Spier, Havasupai Ethnography, 1928, p. 258. "Curtain shield."

17. Yavapai

Citations for Drucker under Walapai and for Spier under Walapai both pertain.

Gifford, Northeastern and Western Yavapai, 1936, p. 288. "shield was curtain of deer buckskin attached to stick and hung from bow held horizontally." (Fieldwork, 1932.)

18. Navajo

Hough, ...Armor, 1895, p. 628. "The Navajoes made a shield of cedar rods twined together with cord (Cat. No. 8401, U. S. National Museum)." (Possibly misinformation or an error in cataloging.)

19. Apache: Northern Tonto

Gifford, Apache-Pueblo, 1940, p. 32. "Curtain shield of buckskin." (Fieldwork, 1935.)

Time of location

11. January

12. January

13. January

14. January

15. January

16. January

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

20. Seri

Bancroft, The Native Races...., 1875-76, Vol. 1, p. 579. "shield...of small lathes closely interwoven with cords...could be shut up like a fan, and...carried under the arm." (In addition to hide shields)

Kroeber, The Seri, 1931, pp. 16-17. "shield...4 or 5 feet high, roof-shaped toward the front,...not clear whether it was set up by an archer in front of himself, or carried for him by another man." (Fieldwork, 1930.)

McGee, The Seri Indians, 1898, p. 264. "shield...a pelican pelt, or a robe or kilt comprising several skins...employed either for confusing the enemy by swift brandishing...or for actual protection...against...missiles or weapons. So far as known it is not backed or otherwise strengthened."

21. Chicoratos (headwaters, Sinaloa River)

Citation of Bancroft under Seri above pertains.

22. Central Mexico: "wild tribes"

Bancroft, The Native Races...., 1875-76, Vol. 1, p. 627. "Shields...of small canes so woven together with thread that they can be folded up and carried tied under the arm,...when opened out they cover the greater part of the body." (Source not clear.)

23. Nahua

Nuttall, ...Mexican Shields, 1892, p. 35. A shield which "was oblong and so ingeniously constructed... its bearer...could roll it up and carry it under his arm. When needed...it was...unrolled and covered its man from head to foot. (Citing Bernal Diaz, Historia Verdadera, Madrid, 1632, f. 67; citing Oiego Godoy, Relacion, Historiadores Primitivos, Madrid, 1749, Vol. 1, p. 167; although Nuttall calls these shields Mexican, her references seem to be the same as those for the shields of Chiapas cited by Joyce under Chiapas below.

Ibid., "Clavigero surmises that these folding shields

20. 1971

22

24

25

26

27

28

29. 1971

29

30

31

32

33

34

35

36

37

38

39

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

23. Nahua (continued)

were manufactured of leather or nequen-cloth covered with a layer of indiarubber." (Citing Clavigero, Historia Antigua, ed. Mora, Mexico, 1844, Vol. 1, p. 215; probably erroneous and they were of rod construction instead.)

24. Chiapas

Joyce, Mexican Archaeology, 1920, p. 289-90. "both Diaz and Godol mention long shields, covering most of the body, which could be folded or rolled up and carried...under the arm...among the tribes of Chiapas."

25. Maya

Joyce, Mexican Archaeology, 1920, p. 288-89. "At Piedras Negras and Menche figures are found carrying objects which I take to be shields of some pliable material, and these are paralleled in the reliefs on the ball-court at Chichen Itza." (Referring to relief carvings in the ruins.)

Title of location

(2) Name (Country)

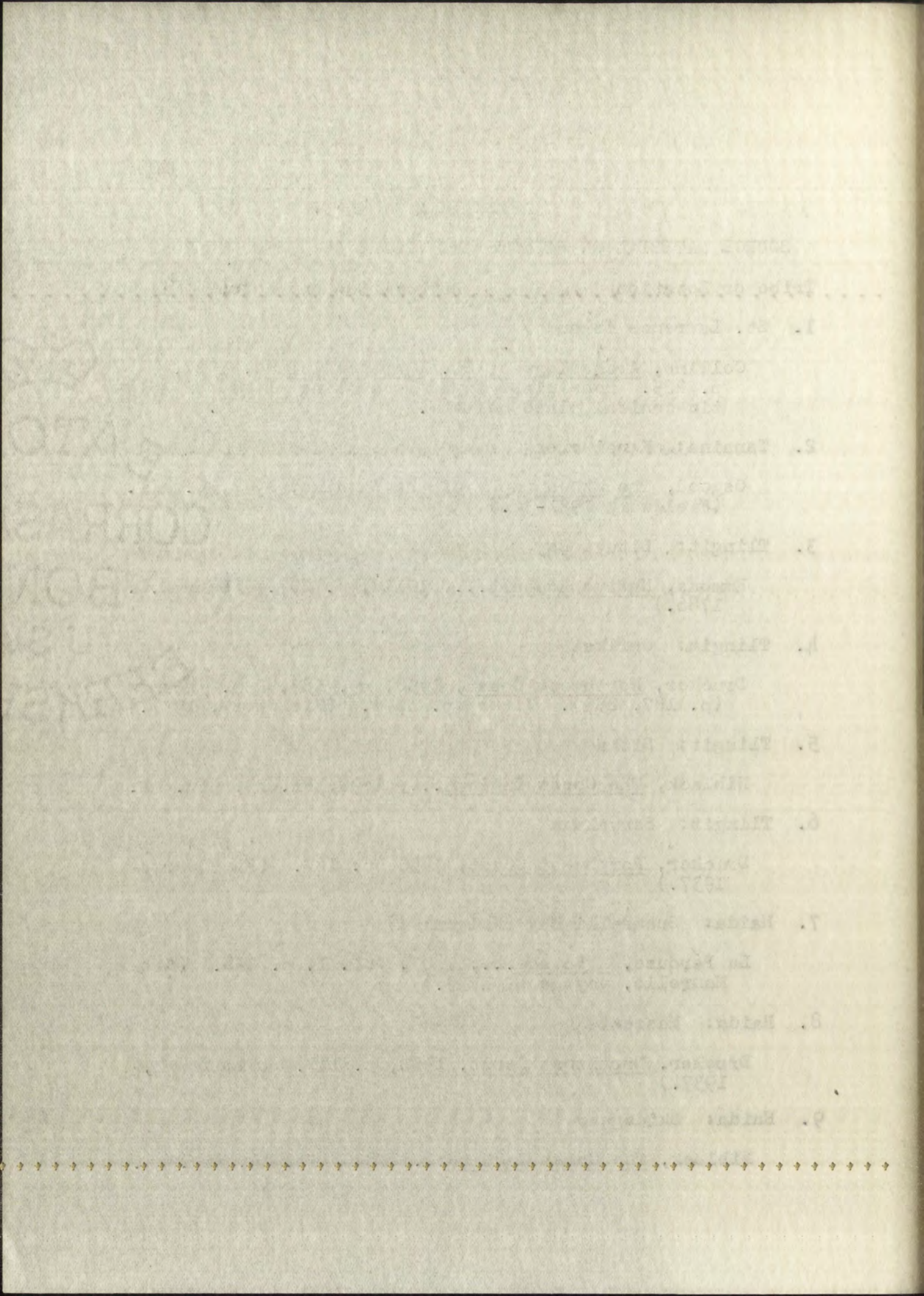
St. George

St. George

APPENDIX I

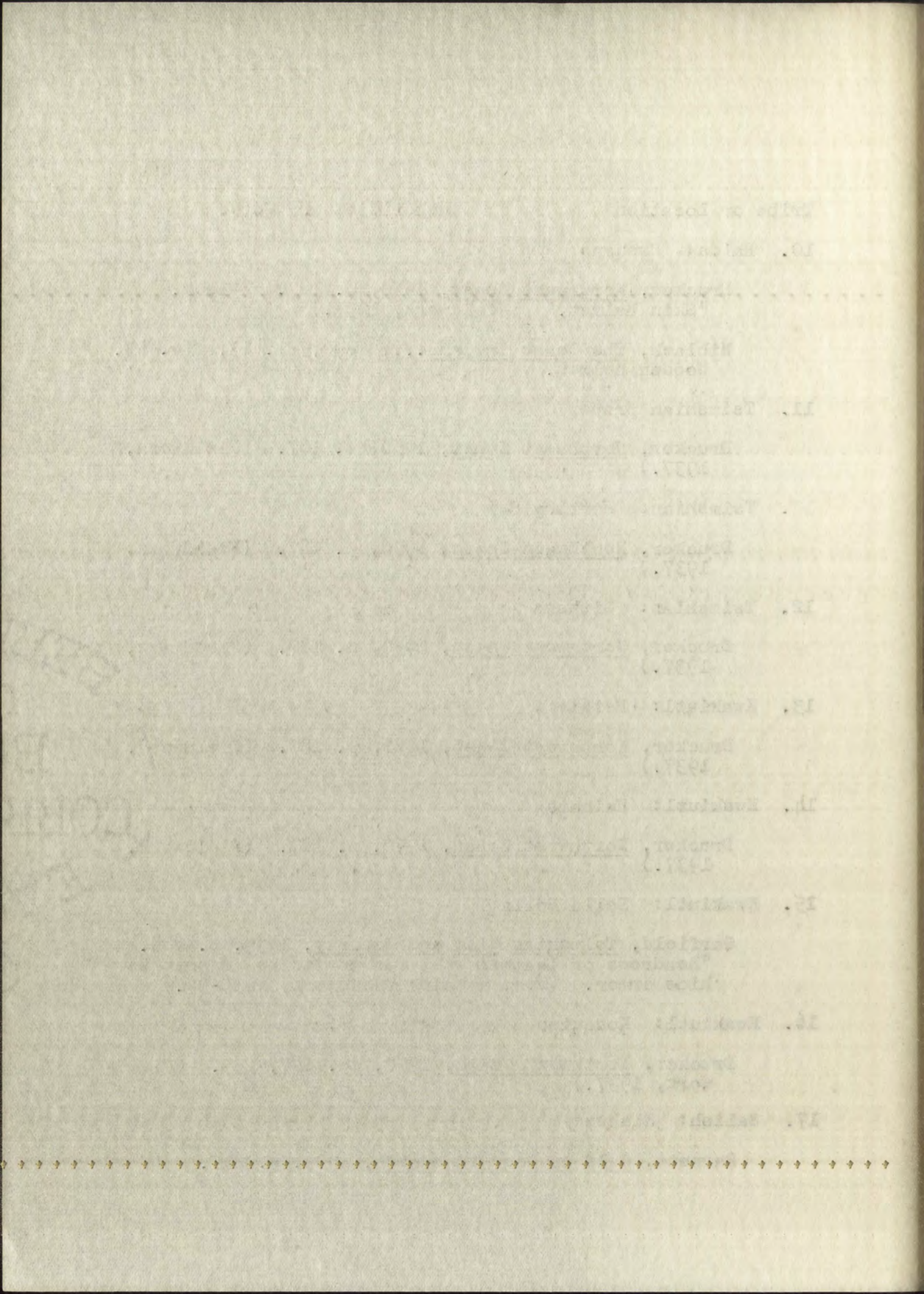
SOURCE MATERIAL ON HELMETS AND VISORS IN NORTH AMERICA

- | Tribe or Location | Authorities and Notes |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. St. Lawrence Island | Collins, <u>Archeology of St. Lawrence Island</u> , 1937, p. 225. Bone plate found resembling plates of Asiatic conical plate helmets. |
| 2. Tanaina: Kenai area | Osgood, <u>The Ethnography of the Tanaina</u> , 1937, p. 111. (Fieldwork 1931-34.) |
| 3. Tlingit: Lituya Bay | Emmons, <u>Native Account...</u> , 1911a, p. 297. (Seen A.D. 1786.) |
| 4. Tlingit: Chilkat | Drucker, <u>Northwest Coast</u> , 1950, pp. 187, 259. Helmet (p. 187, 259). Visor (p. 187). (Fieldwork, 1937.) |
| 5. Tlingit: Sitka | Niblack, <u>The Coast Indians...</u> , 1890, Pl. 13, fig. 42. |
| 6. Tlingit: Sanyakwan | Drucker, <u>Northwest Coast</u> , 1950, p. 187. (Fieldwork, 1937.) |
| 7. Haida: Bucarelli Bay (Kaigani ?) | La Pérouse, <u>A Voyage...</u> , 1807, Vol. 1, p. 328. (Citing Maurelle, voyage of 1779.) |
| 8. Haida: Massett | Drucker, <u>Northwest Coast</u> , 1950, p. 187. (Fieldwork, 1937.) |
| 9. Haida: Skidegate | Niblack, <u>The Coast Indians...</u> , 1890, Pl. 13, fig. 44. |



- | Tribe or Location | Authorities and Notes |
|----------------------------|--|
| 10. Haida: Skedans | Drucker, <u>Northwest Coast</u> , 1950, p. 187. "Visor."
"Skin helmet." (Fieldwork, 1937.)

Niblack, <u>The Coast Indians...</u> , 1890, Pl. 13, fig. 45.
Wooden helmet. |
| 11. Tsimshian proper | Drucker, <u>Northwest Coast</u> , 1950, p. 187. (Fieldwork, 1937.) |
| 12. Tsimshian: Hartley Bay | Drucker, <u>Northwest Coast</u> , 1950, p. 187. (Fieldwork, 1937.) |
| 12. Tsimshian: Gitksan | Drucker, <u>Northwest Coast</u> , 1950, p. 187. (Fieldwork, 1937.) |
| 13. Kwakiutl: Haisla | Drucker, <u>Northwest Coast</u> , 1950, p. 187. (Fieldwork, 1937.) |
| 14. Kwakiutl: Haihais | Drucker, <u>Northwest Coast</u> , 1950, p. 187. (Fieldwork, 1937.) |
| 15. Kwakiutl: Bella Bella | Garfield, <u>Tsimshian Clan and Society</u> , 1939, p. 268.
"headress of leather with fur on it" as adjunct to
hide armor. (From a tale; fieldwork, 1932-37.) |
| 16. Kwakiutl: Kosquimo | Drucker, <u>Northwest Coast</u> , 1950, pp. 187, 259. (Field-
work, 1937.) |
| 17. Salish: Klahuse | Barnett, <u>Gulf of Georgia Salish</u> , 1939, p. 247. |



- | Tribe or Location | Authorities and Notes |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 17. Salish: Klahuse (continued) | |
| | (Fieldwork, 1934-35.) |
| 18. Salish: Cowichan proper | |
| | Barnett, <u>Gulf of Georgia Salish</u> , 1939, p. 247. (Fieldwork, 1934-35.) |
| 19. Tahltan | |
| | Emmons, <u>The Tahltan Indians</u> , 1911b, "headpieces of wood." |
| | Honigsmann, <u>The Kaska Indians</u> ..., 1954, n., p. 98. "helmets of thick goat skin." (Citing Jenness, <u>Indians of Canada</u> , Bulletin, Canadian Department of Mines, Vol. 65, 1932, p. 372; and Teit, <u>On Tahltan (Athabaskan) Work</u> , Summary Reports of the Geological Survey of Canada, 1912, p. 485.) |
| 20. Kaska: Upper Liard River | |
| | Honigsmann, <u>The Kaska Indians</u> ..., 1954, p. 95. (Fieldwork, 1944-45.) |
| 21. Slave: Lower Liard River | |
| | Wentzel, <u>Letters</u> ..., 1889, p. 96. As part of war dress: "A cap decorated with feathers..., sometimes bear claws sewed to a piece of leather served the purpose of a cap." (Period A.D. 1807-25.) |
| 22. Carrier: lower | |
| | Ray, <u>Plateau</u> , 1942, p. 153. (Fieldwork, 1936-37.) |
| 23. Chilcotin | |
| | Farrand, <u>The Chilcotin</u> , 1899, p. 647. (Fieldwork, 1897.) |
| 24. Shuswap | |
| | Ray, <u>Plateau</u> , 1942, p. 153. "'Protective cap' representing guardian spirit." (Fieldwork, 1936-37.) |

Archaeology and History

Types of Location

17. Salmon River (continued)

18. Salmon River (continued)

19. Salmon River (continued)

20. Salmon River (continued)

21. Salmon River (continued)

22. Salmon River (continued)

23. Salmon River (continued)

24. Salmon River (continued)

25. Salmon River (continued)

26. Salmon River (continued)

27. Salmon River (continued)

28. Salmon River (continued)

29. Salmon River (continued)

30. Salmon River (continued)

31. Salmon River (continued)

32. Salmon River (continued)

33. Salmon River (continued)

34. Salmon River (continued)

35. Salmon River (continued)

36. Salmon River (continued)

37. Salmon River (continued)

38. Salmon River (continued)

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

25. Nez Perce

Spinden, The Nez Perce...., 1908, p. 228. "A helmet, or hat, is said to have been made of stiff elk-hide; character uncertain." Peabody Museum specimen ascribed to Nez Perce has open crown and flap down back of neck and is similar to Cheyenne examples.

26. Klikitat

Ray, Plateau, 1942, p. 153. (Fieldwork, 1936-37.)

27. Western Washington; Northwestern Oregon

Gibbs, Tribes...., 1877, p. 192. (Citing Cox, Adventures...., N.Y., 1832; probably Chinook.)

28. Chinook: Lower

Ray, Lower Chinook...., 1938, p. 60. Helmet of hide or basketry. (Citing John Dunn, History of Oregon Territory, London, 1844, p. 125.)

Ray, Plateau, 1942, p. 153. "Elkskin helmet." (Fieldwork, 1936-37.)

29. Sixes River

Barnett, Oregon Coast, 1937, p. 170. (Fieldwork, 1934.)

30. Tututni

Barnett, Oregon Coast, 1937, p. 170. (Fieldwork, 1934.)

31. Tolowa

Barnett, Oregon Coast, 1937, p. 170. (Fieldwork, 1934.)

Chetco

Barnett, Oregon Coast, 1937, p. 170. (Fieldwork, 1934.)

32. Takelma

Sapir, Notes on the Takelma, 1907, p. 273. (Fieldwork, 1906.)

Index of Locations

29. 1st 1st

28. 2nd 1st

27. 3rd 1st

26. 4th 1st

25. 5th 1st

24. 6th 1st

23. 7th 1st

22. 8th 1st

21. 9th 1st

20. 10th 1st

19. 11th 1st

18. 12th 1st

17. 13th 1st

16. 14th 1st

15. 15th 1st

14. 16th 1st

13. 17th 1st

12. 18th 1st

11. 19th 1st

10. 20th 1st

9. 21st 1st

8. 22nd 1st

7. 23rd 1st

6. 24th 1st

5. 25th 1st

4. 26th 1st

3. 27th 1st

2. 28th 1st

1. 29th 1st

0. 30th 1st

31. 31st 1st

32. 32nd 1st

33. 33rd 1st

34. 34th 1st

35. 35th 1st

36. 36th 1st

37. 37th 1st

38. 38th 1st

39. 39th 1st

40. 40th 1st

41. 41st 1st

42. 42nd 1st

43. 43rd 1st

44. 44th 1st

45. 45th 1st

46. 46th 1st

47. 47th 1st

48. 48th 1st

49. 49th 1st

50. 50th 1st

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

33. Yurok

Driver, Northwest California, 1939, pp. 328, 392.
 Helmet (p. 328). "Hide curtain sometimes hung from
 helmet to chest, with holes for eyes (p. 392).
 (Fieldwork, 1935.)

34. Hupa

Driver, Northwest California, 1939, p. 328. Probably
 present but some doubt on part of informant or
 ethnographer. (Fieldwork, 1935.)

Chilula

Driver, Northwest California, 1939, pp. 328, 392.
 (Fieldwork, 1935.)

35. Sinkyone

Driver, Northwest California, 1939, p. 328. (Field-
 work, 1935.)

36. Kato

Essene, Round Valley, 1942, p. 17. Elkhide helmet
 said to be present, but some doubt on part of ethno-
 grapher; however, "Elkhide pulled partly over head
 to make effective helmet." (Fieldwork, 1938.)

37. Klamath

Voegelin, Northeast California, 1942, p. 73. Affirmed,
 but some doubt on part of informant or ethnographer.
 (Fieldwork, 1936.)

38. Modoc

Voegelin, Northwest California, 1942, p. 73. (Field-
 work, 1936.)

39. Shasta

Dixon, The Shasta, 1907, p. 438-39. (Fieldwork,
 1900-04.)

Tribe or location

33. Iroquois

Driver, William H. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.

34. Iroquois

Driver, William H. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.

35. Iroquois

Driver, William H. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.

36. Iroquois

Driver, William H. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.

37. Iroquois

Driver, William H. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.

38. Iroquois

Driver, William H. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.

39. Iroquois

Driver, William H. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.

40. Iroquois

Driver, William H. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.
Haines, W. H. H.

- | Tribe or Location | Authorities and Notes |
|------------------------|--|
| 39. Shasta (continued) | <p>Holt, <u>Shasta Ethnography</u>, 1946, p. 313. (Fieldwork, 1937.)</p> <p>Kroeber, <u>Handbook...</u>, 1925, p. 298.</p> <p>Voegelin, <u>Northeast California</u>, 1942, p. 73. (Fieldwork, 1936.)</p> |
| 40. Achomawi | <p>Voegelin, <u>Northeast California</u>, 1942, p. 73. (Fieldwork, 1936.)</p> |
| 41. Atsugewi | <p>Garth, <u>Atsugewi Ethnography</u>, 1953, p. 154. (Fieldwork, 1938-39.)</p> <p>Voegelin, <u>Northeast California</u>, 1942, p. 73. (Fieldwork, 1936.)</p> |
| 42. Yana | <p>Gifford and Klimek, <u>Yana</u>, 1936, p. 82. (Fieldwork, 1934.)</p> <p>Sapir and Spier, ...<u>Culture of the Yana</u>, 1943, p. 269. (Fieldwork, 1907.)</p> |
| 43. Wintu | <p>Voegelin, <u>Northeast California</u>, 1942, p. 73. (Fieldwork, 1936.)</p> |
| 44. Paviotso | <p>Lowie, ...<u>Shoshonian Ethnography</u>, 1924, p. 245. (Paviotso of Pyramid Lake, Fallon and Lovelock.)</p> |
| 45. Cheyenne | <p>Spinden, <u>The Nez Percé...</u>, 1908, p. 228. Peabody Museum specimen ascribed to the Nez Percés has open crown and flap down back of neck. According to</p> |

Time or Location

30. Shasta (cont.)

1937

Archer, ...

Voegel, ...
work, 1937

40. Ashmawi

Voegel, ...
work, 1937

41. Alagood

Guth, ...
work, 1937

Voegel, ...
work, 1937

42. Yans

Griffith and ...
1937

Guth and ...
(1937)

43. Wren

Voegel, ...
work, 1937

44. Pevsner

...
(1937)

45. Chapin

Spencer, ...
work, 1937

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

45. Cheyenne (continued)

Spinden: "Similar specimens are common among the Cheyenne, from whom this piece may...have been obtained."

46. Huron

Champlain, Voyages and Discoveries..., 1929, Pl. 6, fig. E. Figure of a probable Huron warrior in rod armor pictures also a helmet, seemingly of rod construction. (Period A.D. 1603-15.)

47. Iroquois: Mohawk

Wood, New Englands Prospect, 1898, p. 61. Armor of "sea horse skinnes and barkes of trees" and "head peeces of the same." (Period A.D. 1629-33.)

48. Delaware

Lindeström, Geographia Americae..., 1925, pp. 197, 206. "helmets made of hard wooden pins and strong wood" (p. 197). "helmets which are made of sticks and wood" (p. 206). (Period A.D. 1654-56.)

49. Lower Savannah River

Oviedo, Historia General y Natural..., 1851-55, Vol.1, p. 561. "capacetes hechos de cueros de vacas crudos y pelados." (From diary of Rodrigo Ranjel, 1540.)

50. Seri

Kroeber, The Seri, 1931, p. 16. "helmet...of hide." (May have been similar to the war caps of the Southwest and not a true helmet; fieldwork, 1930.)

51. Cahita

Beals, The Comparative Ethnology of Northern Mexico..., 1932, p. 27. "wore something resembling a helmet." (May have been similar to war caps of the Southwest and not a true helmet.)

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

52. Nahua

Bandelier, On the Art of War..., 1877, pp. 110-11.
"wooden forms, intermediate between masks and
helmets, imitating heads of ferocious beasts...
and covered with the skins of these animals."
(Citing Anonymous Conqueror from a documentary
source; and Clavigero, Lib. 7, cop. 23.)

APPENDIX J

SOURCES FOR LOCAL ARMORS NOT OF THE STANDARD
ROD OR HIDE CONSTRUCTION IN NORTH AMERICA

Tribe or Location	Authorities and Notes
1. Kwakiutl	Curtis, E. S., <u>The North American Indian</u> , 1907-30, Vol. 10, p. 18. (Fieldwork, 1910-11.)
2. Nootka: Muchalat	Drucker, ... <u>Nootkan Tribes</u> , 1951, p. 335. (Field- work, 1935-36.)
3. Nootka: Clayoquot	Drucker, <u>Northwest Coast</u> , 1950, p. 187. (Fieldwork, 1936.)
4. Pomo	Gifford and Kroeber, <u>Pomo</u> , 1937, p. 142. (Central Pomo.)
5. Yellowknife	Osgood, ... <u>Great Bear Lake Indians</u> , 1932, p. 62. (Citing Mason, manuscript, National Museum of Canada.)
6. Cree, Eastern	Skinner, ... <u>Eastern Cree and Northern Salteaux</u> , 1911, p. 78. (Description seems questionable; fieldwork, 1908-09.)
7. Salteaux, Northern	Citation of Skinner under Cree above pertains.
8. Penobscot	Speck, <u>Penobscot Man</u> , 1940, p. 147. (Fieldwork, 1907- 18.)

Table of Contents

I. Preface

II. Introduction

III. Chapter I

IV. Chapter II

V. Chapter III

VI. Chapter IV

VII. Chapter V

VIII. Chapter VI

IX. Chapter VII

X. Chapter VIII

XI. Chapter IX

XII. Chapter X

XIII. Chapter XI

XIV. Chapter XII

XV. Chapter XIII

XVI. Chapter XIV

XVII. Chapter XV

XVIII. Chapter XVI

XIX. Chapter XVII

XX. Chapter XVIII

XXI. Chapter XIX

XXII. Chapter XX

XXIII. Chapter XXI

XXIV. Chapter XXII

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

9. Iroquois: Mohawk

Wood, Nevv Englands Prospect, 1898, p. 61. (It is doubtful that this armor was similar or related to the hide armor of the West; period A.D. 1629-33.)

10. Yavapai

Gifford, ...Southeastern Yavapai, 1932, p. 225.
(Fieldwork, 1929-30.)

11. Pueblos

Cushing, Pueblo Indians..., 1896, p. 848. (Questionable; sources not given.)

Tribe or Locality

9. The name of the

10. The name of the

11. The name of the

12. The name of the

13. The name of the

14. The name of the

15. The name of the

16. The name of the

17. The name of the

18. The name of the

19. The name of the

20. The name of the

21. The name of the

22. The name of the

23. The name of the

24. The name of the

25. The name of the

26. The name of the

27. The name of the

28. The name of the

29. The name of the

30. The name of the

31. The name of the

32. The name of the

33. The name of the

34. The name of the

35. The name of the

APPENDIX K

SOURCE MATERIAL ON ROD SHIELDS IN NORTH AMERICA

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

1. Iroquois

Thwaites, The Jesuit Relations..., 1896-1906, Vol. 13, p. 272. "'shields...of osier or of bark, covered with one or more skins stretched across.'" (Citing Lafitau, Moeurs des Sauvages Ameriquains, Paris, 1724, Vol. 2, p. 197.)

2. "Massawomek" (Susquehanna?)

Smith, The Generall Historie..., 1907, Vol. 1, p. 129. "light Targets (which are made of little small sticks woven betwixt strings of their hempe and silke grasse, as is our Cloth, but so firmly that no arrow can possibly pierce them)." (Observed, year A.D. 1608)

3. Lower Savannah River

Garcilaso de la Vega, The Florida of the Inca..., 1951, p. 323. "great numbers of oblong shields, ...of cane, woven with...precision and strength." (Observed, A.D. 1540 at "Talomeco" on the lower Savannah River.)

4. Lower Mississippi River

Oviedo y Valdés, Historia General y Natural..., 1851-55, Vol. 1, p. 573. "escudos, que son hechos de canas juntas, tales y tan texidas con tal hilo que apenas los passa una ballesta." (Observed, A.D. 1541 at De Soto's crossing of the Mississippi River.)

5. Western Déné

Morice, The Western Dénés..., 1889, p. 140. Oval shield "of closely interwoven branches."

6. Carrier

Morice, The Canadian Dénés, 1906, p. 217. A shield called by the descriptive name "'amelanchiar which is held in the hand'" thereby indicating a rod shield for amelanchiar was the material for rods in their

1930-1931

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

6. Carrier (continued)

rod armor.

7. Shuswap

Fraser, Journal..., 1889, p. 179. A rod curtain shield; see full citation in Appendix H, p. 200, under Shuswap.

Teit, The Shuswap, 1909, p. 538. Shields "of medium size, made of wooden slats or rosewood rods, woven together with bark thread or thong."

8. Okanagan, Southern

Cline, et al., The Sinkaietk...., 1938, p. 53. "square slat shields were made of sticks 'braided' closely together in a checker (?) weave." (Apparently using the term "slat" generally; fieldwork, 1930.)

9. Achomawi

Voegelin, Northeast California, 1942, pp. 73, 192. "Circular rod shield" (p. 73). "String in center, by which to hold shield" (p. 192). (Western Achomawi; fieldwork, 1936.)

10. Navajo

Hough, ...Armor, 1895, p. 628. A rod curtain shield. See full citation in Appendix H, p. 202, under Navajo.

11. Seri

Bancroft, The Native Races..., 1875-76, Vol. 1, p. 579. A rod curtain shield. See full citation in Appendix H, p. 203, under Seri.

12. Chicoratos (headwaters, Sinaloa River)

Citation of Bancroft under Seri above pertains.

13. Jalisco

Noticias Varias...., 1878, pp. 263. "rodela de unas varas muy recias y muy entretejidas." (Information

Terrestrial and Marine

Tribe or Location

6. Garter (continued)

rod garter

7. Shrews

Fraser, Journal... 1888, p. 170. A new species of shrew
see full citation in Appendix H, p. 200, under Shrews.

Telf. The Shrews, 1909, p. 232. "Shrews" of medium
size, made of wooden slats or rounded rods, woven
together with bark thread or string.

8. Olanagan, Southern

Cline, et al., The Shrews... 1936, p. 23. "Shrews"
of medium size made of slats, woven closely
together in a checker (?) pattern. (Shrews?)
The term "shrew" generally; (Shrews?) 1930.

9. Achomawi

Voegein, Northwest California, 1917, no. 73, 102.
"Circular rod shield" (p. 73). "Shield in center"
by which to hold shield" (p. 102). (Shrews?)
(Shrews?) 1936.

10. Navajo

Hough, ... 1895, p. 285. A rod curtain shield.
See full citation in Appendix H, p. 200, under Navajo.

11. Seri

Bancroft, The Native Races... 1875-76, vol. 1, p. 272.
A rod curtain shield. See full citation in Appendix
H, p. 200, under Seri.

12. Chiricahua (Mescaleros, Gila River)

Citation of Bancroft under Seri above pertinent.

13. Jai

Mescaleros Jai... 1875, p. 285. "Shield in center"
very much like a very ornate shield. (Shrews?)

Tribe or Location	Authorities and Notes
-------------------	-----------------------

13. Jalisco (continued)

received by Antonio de Leyva, A.D. 1579.)

14. Central Mexico: "wild tribes"

Bancroft, The Native Races...., 1875-76, Vol. 1, p. 627, A rod curtain shield. See full citation in Appendix H, p. 203, under Central Mexico.

15. Nahua

Bancroft, The Native Races...., 1875-76, Vol. 2, p. 406. Round or oval shields "of flexible bamboo canes, bound firmly together." (Source not clear; could be from Sahagun.)

Nuttall, ...Mexican Shields, 1892. This source describes numerous museum specimens and codex representations of Nahua rod shields, also cites as historical sources Anonymous Conquerer, Bartolome de las Casas, Herrera (Historia de las Indias), Sahagun, Bernal Diaz (Historia Verdadera), and Diego Godoy (Relacion).

16. Chiapas

Joyce, Mexican Archaeology, 1920, pp. 289-90. A rod curtain shield. See full citation in Appendix H, p. 204, under Chiapas.

17. Maya

Bancroft, The Native Races...., 1875-76, p. 742. "Shields...of split reeds." (Source not clear.)

Joyce, Mexican Archaeology, 1920, pp. 289-290. Probable rod curtain shields. See full citation in Appendix H, p. 204, under Maya.

Nuttall, ...Mexican Shields, 1892, p. 36. War-shields which were "round made of split bamboo closely interwoven." (Citing Diego de Landa, Relacion, ed. B. de Bourbourg, p. 172.)

Tribe or Location

Authorities and Notes

18. Nicaragua

Bancroft, The Native Races..., 1875-76, p. 742.
"Shields...of split reeds." (Source not clear.)



STATE
CORP.
BO
U.S.
BANK

Author's name and address

Place of location

18. November

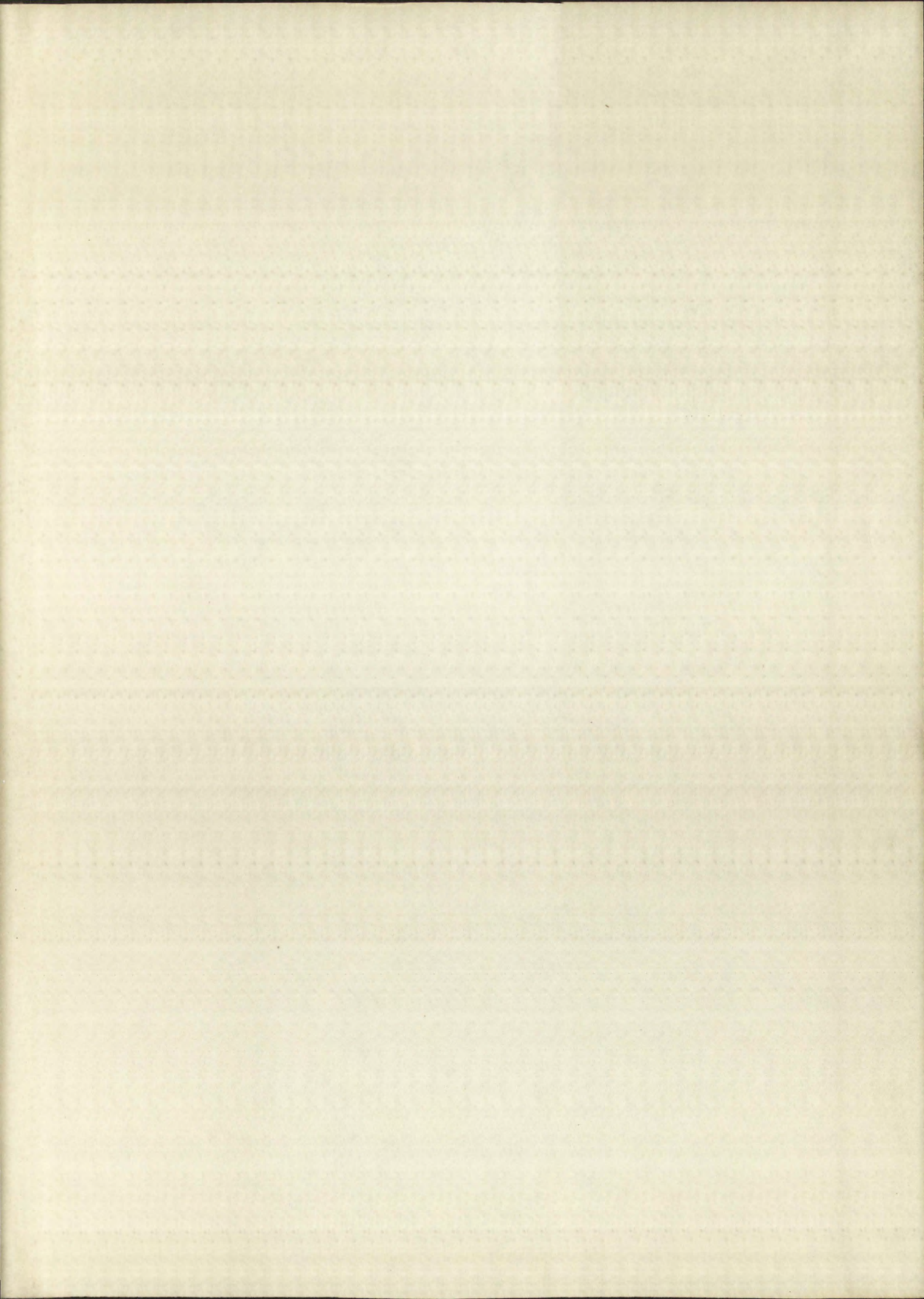
Received by the Library of the
National Archives and Records Administration
(Date and place)

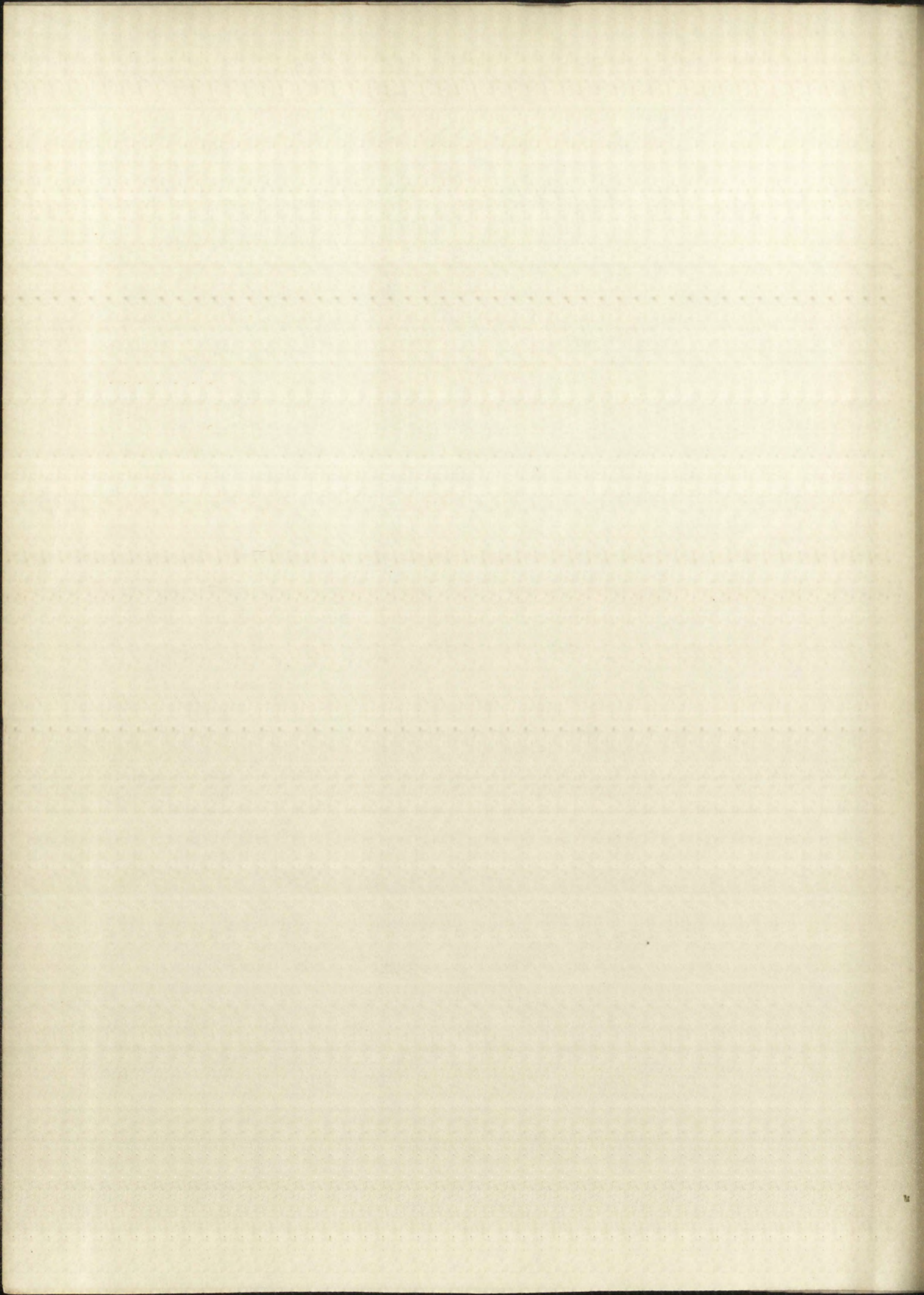


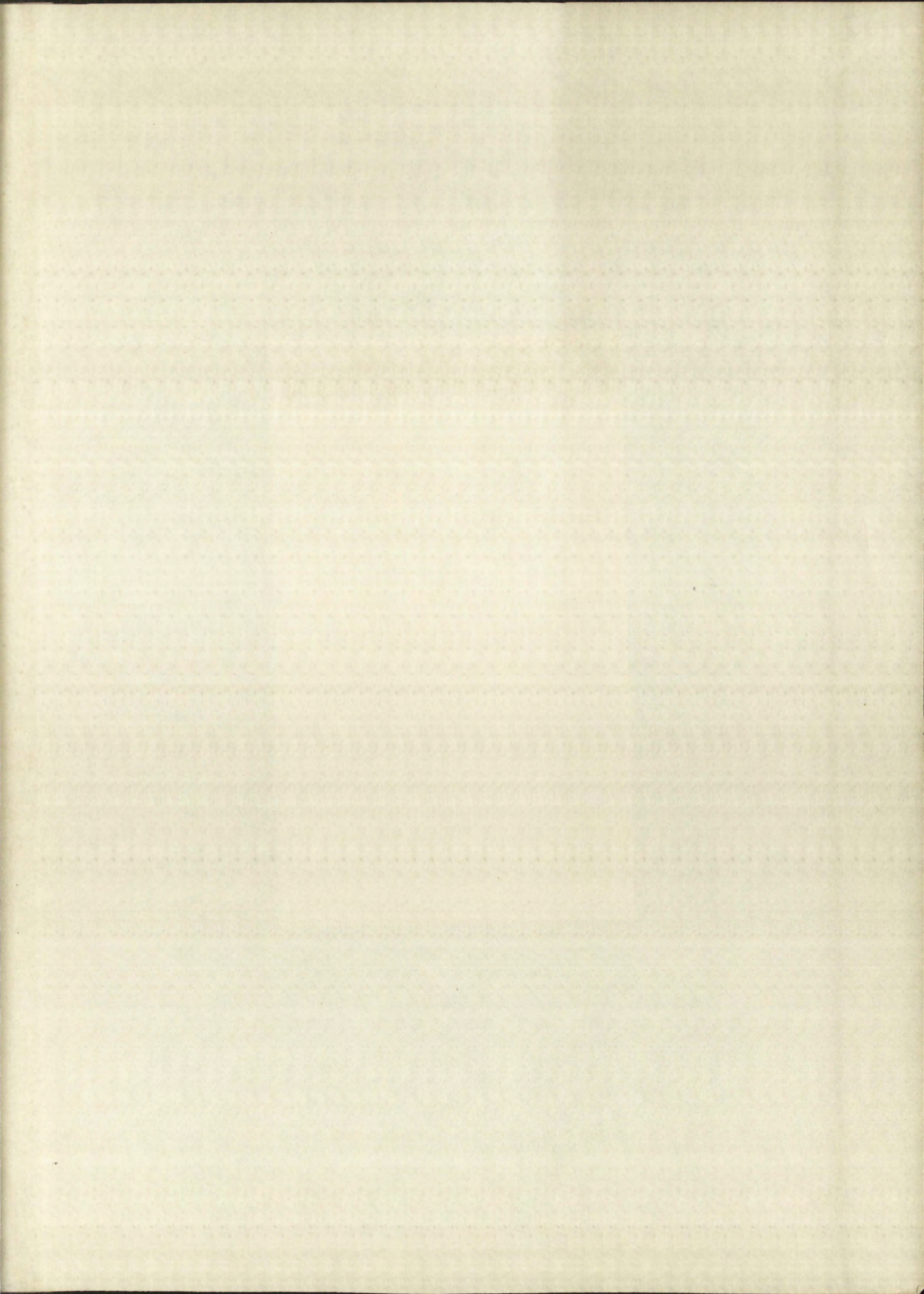
218
CORPUS
BOX
18

MILLERS FALLS
E. E. RASB
COTTON CONTENT

MILLERS FALLS
ERASE
COTTON CONTENT







IMPORTANT!

Special care should be taken to prevent loss or damage of this volume. If lost or damaged, it must be paid for at the current rate of typing.

[illegible]

